




Unpin a conversation

You can unpin specific conversations at the top of the Messages list.

Do any of the following:


- Touch and hold a conversation, then drag the message to the bottom of the list.
- Touch and hold a conversation, then tap .

Switch from a Messages conversation to a FaceTime or audio call

In a Messages conversation, you can initiate a FaceTime or audio call with the person you're chatting with in Messages.



1. In a Messages conversation, tap the profile picture or the name at the top of the conversation.
2. Tap FaceTime or audio.

Send a message to a group or business on iPhone

Use the Messages app  to send photos, videos, and audio messages to groups of people. You can also send a message to a business using business chat.

Reply to a specific message in a conversation

You can respond to a specific message inline to improve clarity and help keep conversations organized.

1. In a conversation, double-tap (or touch and hold) a message, then tap .
2. Write your response, then tap .



Mention people in a conversation


You can mention other people in a conversation to call their attention to a specific message. Depending on their settings, this can notify them even if they have muted the conversation.

1. In a conversation, begin typing a contact's name in the text field.

2. Tap the contact's name when it appears.




You can also mention a contact in Messages by typing @ followed by the contact's name.

To change your notification settings for when you're mentioned in Messages, go to Settings  > Messages > Notify Me.

Change a group name and photo


The photo used for group conversations includes all participants and changes based on who was recently active. You can also assign a personalized photo to the group conversation.

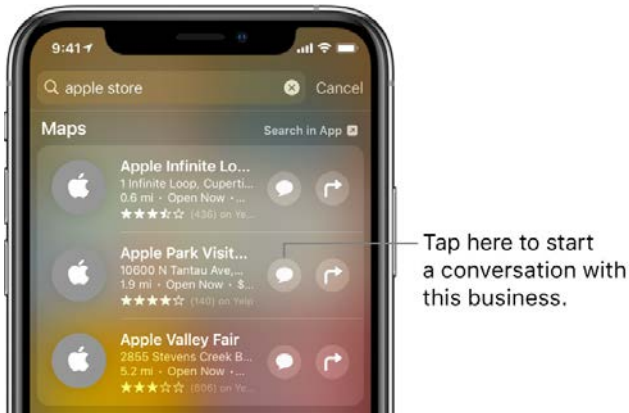
Tap the name or number at the top of the conversation, tap  at the top right, select Change Name and Photo, then choose an option.

Use Business Chat

In Messages, you can communicate with businesses that offer Business Chat. You can get answers to questions, resolve issues, get advice on what to buy, make purchases with Apple Pay, and more.

1. Search for the business you want to chat with using Maps, Safari, Search, or Siri.


2. Start a conversation by tapping a chat link in the search results—for example, , the company logo, or a text link (the appearance of the chat link varies with the context).



You can also initiate a chat with some businesses from their website or iOS app. See the Apple Support article [How to use Business Chat](#).

Note: Business Chat messages you send appear in dark gray, to distinguish them from messages sent using iMessage (in blue) and SMS/MMS messages (in green).






Send photos, videos, and audio messages on iPhone

In the Messages app , you can send photos, videos, and audio messages using iMessage or your SMS/MMS service. You can also share, save, or print attachments. Your carrier may set size limits for attachments; iPhone may compress photo and video attachments when necessary.



For information about sending SMS/MMS attachments on models with Dual SIM, see [Manage your cellular plans](#).

Send a photo or video

1. In Messages, do any of the following while writing a message:

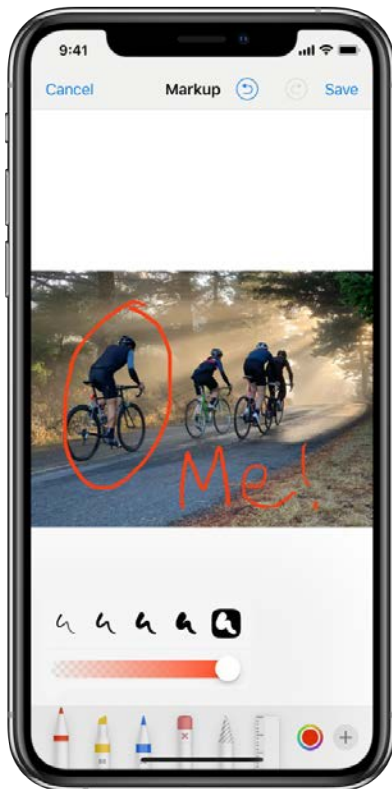
- *Take a photo within Messages:* Tap , frame the shot in the viewfinder, then tap .
- *Take a video within Messages:* Tap , choose Video mode, then tap .
- *Choose an existing photo or video:* Tap  in the app drawer, then swipe left to browse through recent shots, or tap All Photos.






2. Tap  to send your message or  to cancel.

Mark up or edit a photo

You can mark up or edit a photo before you send it in a Messages conversation.














1. Tap  in the app drawer, then choose a photo.
 2. Tap the photo in the message bubble, then do any of the following:
 - Tap Markup, [use the Markup tools](#) to draw on the photo, then tap Save.
 - Tap Edit, [use the photo editing tools](#) to edit the photo, then tap Done.
 3. Tap Done, add a message, then tap  to send the photo, or tap  to remove the photo from the message bubble.
-





Add camera effects to a photo or video


When you take a photo or video in a Messages conversation, you can add camera effects to it—such as filters, stickers, labels, and shapes.

1. In a Messages conversation, tap , then choose Photo or Video mode.

2. Tap , then do any of the following:
 - Tap , then choose a Memoji (on supported models).
 - Tap , then choose a filter to apply to your picture.
 - Tap  to add a text label, or  to add a shape.
 - Tap  to add a Memoji sticker, or  to add an Emoji sticker.
 3. Tap  to close the effect window.
 4. Tap  to take a photo or  to record video.
 5. Tap Done to add the photo or video to the message bubble, where you can add a message, or tap  to send the photo or video directly.
-

Send an audio message

1. In a conversation, touch and hold  to record an audio message.
2. Tap  to listen to your message before you send it.
3. Tap  to send the message or  to cancel.

Note: To save space, iPhone automatically deletes audio messages two minutes after you listen to them, unless you tap Keep. To always keep audio messages, go to Settings  > Messages > Expire (below Audio Messages), then tap Never.




Listen or reply to an audio message


1. Raise iPhone to your ear to play incoming audio messages.
2. Raise it again to reply.

To turn this feature on or off, go to Settings  > Messages, then turn off Raise to Listen.

Share, save, print, copy, or delete a message or attachment


In a conversation, do any of the following with attachments:

- *Share, save, or print an attachment:* Tap the attachment, then tap .
- *Copy an attachment:* Touch and hold the attachment, then tap Copy.
- *Share items from another app:* In the other app, tap Share or , then tap Messages.
- *Forward a message or attachment:* Touch and hold a message or attachment, tap More, select additional items if desired, then tap .

- **Delete an attachment:** Touch and hold a message or attachment, tap More, select additional items if desired, then tap .

Note: Attachments you send over iMessage (such as photos or videos) may be uploaded to Apple and encrypted so that no one but the sender and receiver can access them. To improve performance, your device may automatically upload attachments to Apple while you are composing an iMessage. If your message isn't sent, the attachments are deleted from the server after several days.




Send animated effects in Messages on iPhone

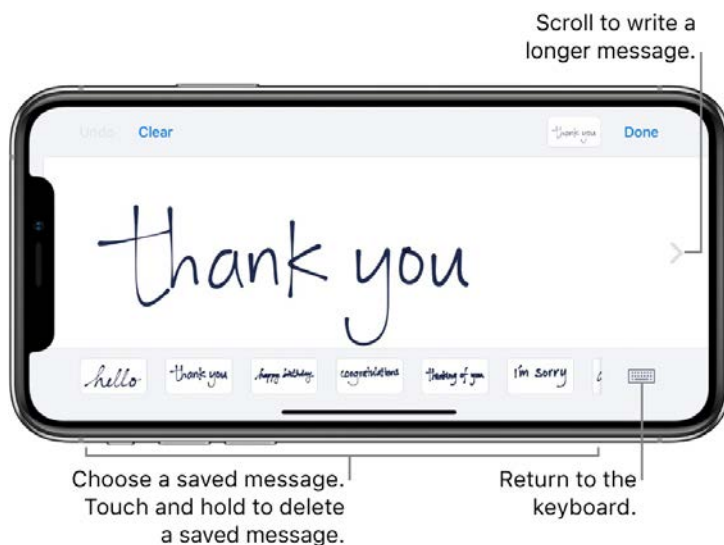
In the Messages app , you can animate a single message with a bubble effect or fill the entire message screen with a full-screen effect (for example, balloons or confetti). You can even send a personal message with invisible ink that remains blurred until the recipient swipes to reveal it.


You need iMessage to send and receive message effects. See [About iMessage and SMS/MMS](#).

Send a handwritten message

Use your finger to write a message. The recipient sees the message animate, just as ink flows on paper.


1. In a conversation, rotate iPhone to landscape orientation.
2. Tap  on the keyboard.
3. Write a message with your finger or choose a saved message at the bottom, then tap Done.
4. Tap  to send your message or  to cancel.






After you create and send a handwritten message, the message is saved at the bottom of the handwriting screen. To use the saved messages again, tap it. To delete the saved message, touch and hold it until the messages jiggle, then tap .

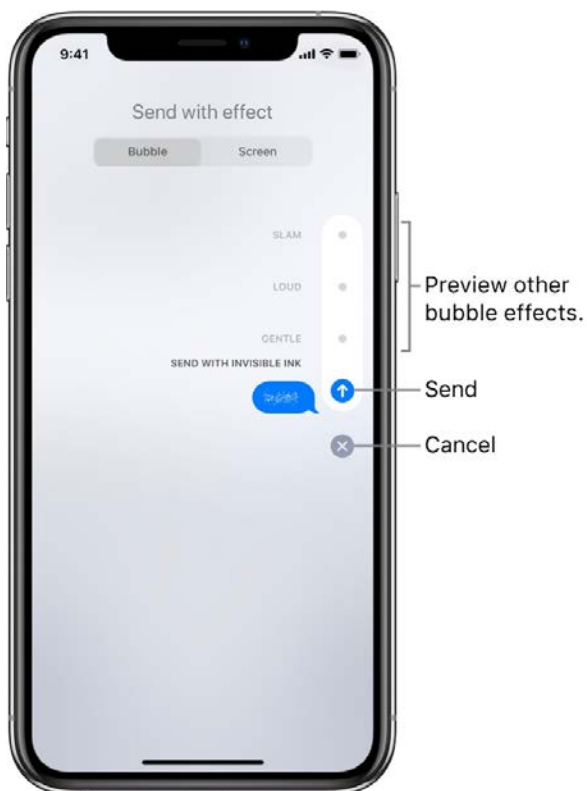
Use a bubble effect

Use bubble effects to animate the message bubble.

1. In a new or existing conversation, type a message or insert a photo or Memoji.
2. Touch and hold , then tap the gray dots to preview different bubble effects.

 **Tip:** Want to send a personal message? When you use invisible ink, the message remains blurred until the recipient swipes to reveal it.




3. Tap  to send the message or  to cancel.

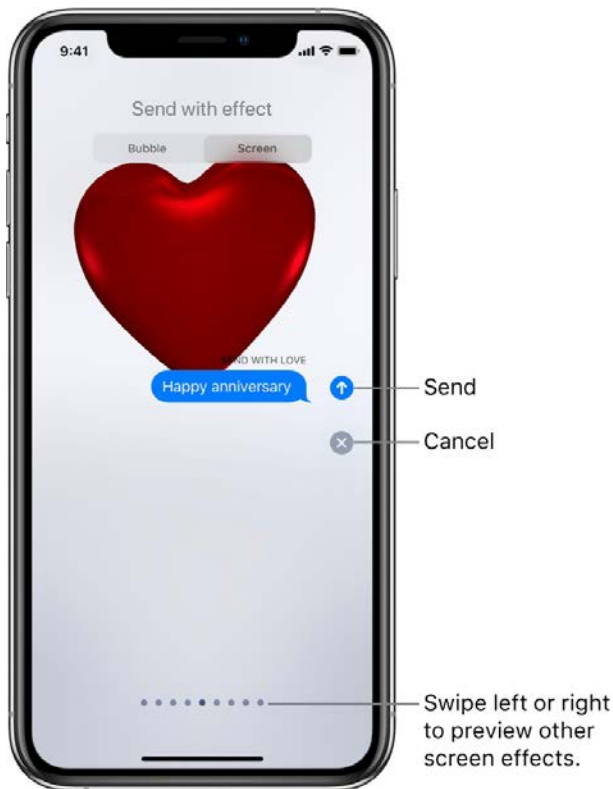


Use a full-screen effect

Use full-screen effects to animate the message screen.

1. In a new or existing conversation, type a message or insert a photo or Memoji.


2. Touch and hold , then tap Screen.
3. Swipe left to preview different screen effects.
4. Tap  to send the message or  to cancel.






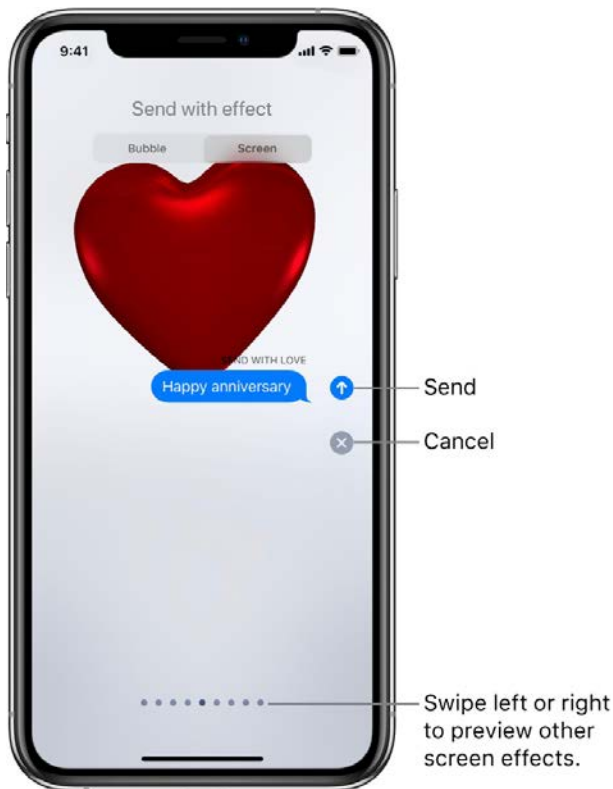
Messages automatically uses the following screen effects for specific text strings:

- Balloons for “Happy birthday”
- Confetti for “Congratulations”
- Fireworks for “Happy New Year”

Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone

In the Messages app , you can decorate a conversation with stickers, play a game, share songs, and more—all through iMessage apps—without leaving Messages. You can expand your message options by downloading more iMessage apps from the App Store.


2. Touch and hold , then tap Screen.
3. Swipe left to preview different screen effects.
4. Tap  to send the message or  to cancel.

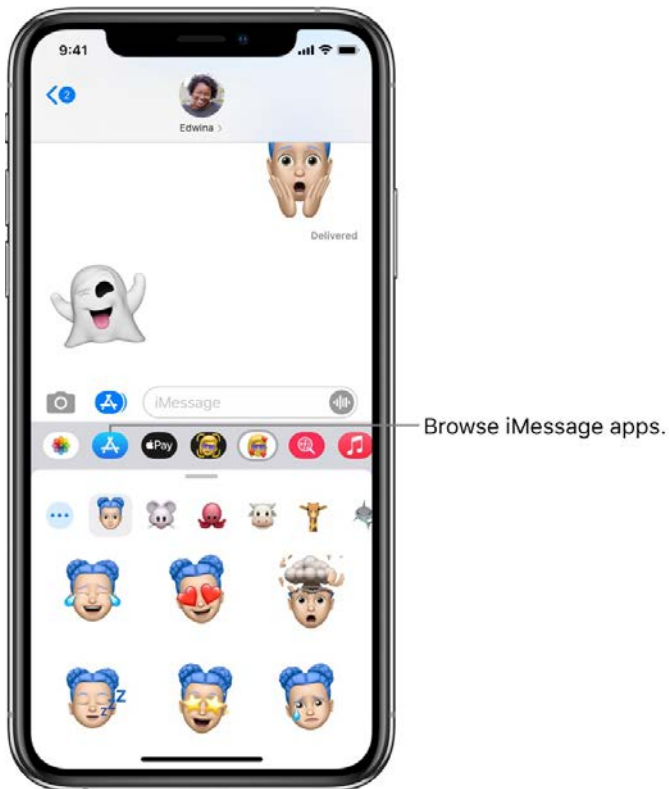


Messages automatically uses the following screen effects for specific text strings:


- Balloons for “Happy birthday”
- Confetti for “Congratulations”
- Fireworks for “Happy New Year”

Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone

In the Messages app , you can decorate a conversation with stickers, play a game, share songs, and more—all through iMessage apps—without leaving Messages. You can expand your message options by downloading more iMessage apps from the App Store.





Browse and download iMessage apps

1. In a Messages conversation, tap  to open the iMessages App Store.
2. Tap an app to see more details and reviews, then tap the price to purchase an app or tap Get to download a free app.

All purchases are made with the payment method associated with your Apple ID.

Use an iMessage app

1. In a conversation, tap an iMessage app in the app drawer.
 2. Tap an item in the iMessage app to add it to a message bubble.
 3. Add a comment if you want, then tap  to send your message or  to cancel.
-

Decorate with stickers

If you've downloaded a sticker app from the App Store, you can enhance your photos and videos with stickers in Messages.

1. In a conversation, tap a sticker app in the app drawer.

2. Touch and hold a sticker, then drag it on top of a message in the conversation. Before you release it, you can do any of the following:
 - *Adjust the angle*: Rotate a second finger around the finger dragging the sticker.
 - *Adjust the size*: Move a second finger closer to or away from the finger dragging the sticker.

You can also place the sticker on top of another sticker, or on a photo.

To see text that's covered by a sticker, double-tap the sticker.

To see more information about the sticker, touch and hold the sticker, then tap Sticker Details. You can do the following:

- See who sent the sticker.
- View the iMessage app that sent the sticker.
- Delete the sticker—swipe left, then tap Delete.

Manage iMessage apps

1. Tap **•••** in the app drawer.
2. Tap Edit, then do any of the following with your iMessage apps:
 - *Reorder apps*: Drag **≡**.
 - *Add an app to your Favorites*: Tap **+**.
 - *Remove an app from your Favorites*: Tap **−**.
 - *Hide an app*: Turn the app off.
 - *Delete an app*: Swipe left on the app, then tap Delete.



Use Memoji in Messages on iPhone



Use the Messages app **🗨️** to express yourself with Memoji and personalized Memoji sticker packs that match your personality and mood. On models with a TrueDepth camera, you can send animated Memoji messages that record your voice and mirror your facial expressions.

Create your own Memoji

You can design your own personalized Memoji—choose skin color and freckles, hairstyle and color, facial features, headwear, glasses, and more. You can create multiple Memoji for different moods.





1. In a conversation, tap , then tap .
2. Tap each feature and choose the options you want. As you add features to your Memoji, your character comes to life.
3. Tap Done to add the Memoji to your collection.

To edit, duplicate, or delete a Memoji, tap , tap the Memoji, then tap .

Send Memoji and Memoji stickers





Messages automatically generates sticker packs based on your Memoji and Memoji characters. You can use stickers to express a range of emotions in new ways.

1. In a conversation, tap .
2. Tap a Memoji in the top row to view the stickers in the sticker pack.
3. To send a sticker do one of the following:
 - Tap the sticker to add it to the message bubble. Add a comment if you want, then tap  to send.
 - Touch and hold a sticker, then drag it on top of a message in the conversation. The sticker is sent automatically when you add it to the message.

Send animated Memoji or Memoji recordings


On supported models you can send Memoji messages that use your voice and mirror your facial expressions.




1. In a conversation, tap , then choose a Memoji.
2. Tap  to record your facial expressions and voice. Tap the red square to stop recording.
Tap Replay to review your message.
3. Tap  to send your message or  to cancel.

You can also take a picture or video of yourself as a Memoji, decorate it with stickers, then send it; see [Add camera effects to a photo or video](#). Or you can [become a Memoji](#) in a FaceTime conversation.



Send a Digital Touch effect in Messages on iPhone

In an iMessage conversation in the Messages app , you can use Digital Touch to send animated sketches, taps, kisses, heartbeats, and more. You can even add a Digital Touch effect to a photo or video.


Send a sketch

1. Tap  in the app drawer.
2. Tap the color dot to choose a color, then draw with one finger.

You can change the color, then start drawing again.







3. Tap  to send your message, or tap  to delete it.
-

Express your feelings


1. Tap  in the app drawer.
2. Send one of the following animations using gestures on the canvas. Your feelings are sent automatically when you finish the gesture:
 - *Tap*: Tap with one finger to create a burst of color. You can change the color, then tap again.
 - *Fireball*: Touch and hold with one finger.
 - *Kiss*: Tap with two fingers.
 - *Heartbeat*: Touch and hold with two fingers.
 - *Heartbreak*: Touch and hold with two fingers until you see a heartbeat, then drag down to break the heart.

Note: If you have Apple Watch or another sensor that records heartbeat data, Messages may use the recorded data when you send a Digital Touch heartbeat.

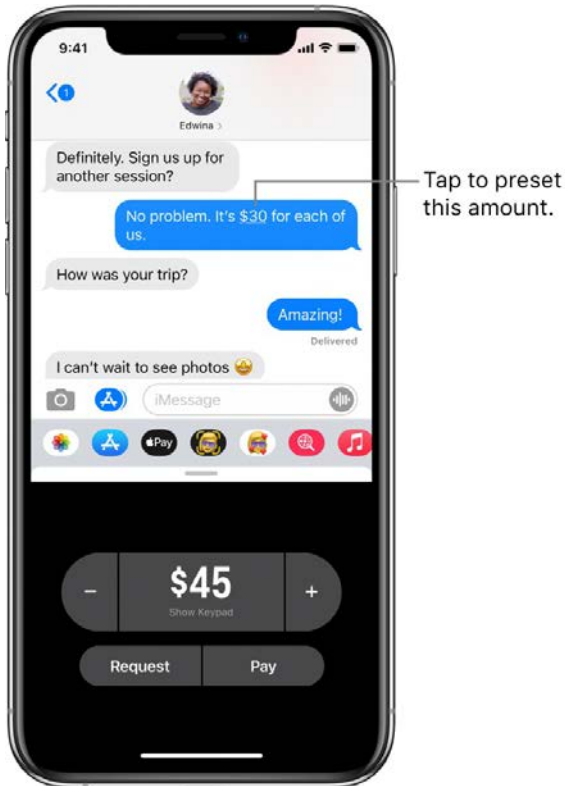
Add a Digital Touch effect to a photo or video

1. Tap  in the app drawer.
 2. Tap .
 3. Tap  to take a photo or  to record a video.
 4. Add a Digital Touch effect, such as a sketch or kiss.
 5. Tap  to send your message, or tap  to delete it.
-

Send and receive money with Apple Pay on iPhone (U.S. only)


In the Messages app , you can use Apple Pay to send and receive money quickly and easily. There's no app to download, and you can use the cards you already have with Apple Pay.

When you receive money in Messages, it's added to your Apple Cash card in Wallet. See [Set up and use Apple Cash on iPhone \(U.S. only\)](#).






Note: Before you send or receive payments with Apple Pay, you need to agree to the terms and conditions of this service.

Send a payment in Messages

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: “Apple Pay 75 dollars to Phillip for the zipline tour” or “Send 15 dollars to Kim for lunch with Apple Pay.” [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

You can also do the following:


1. In an iMessage conversation, tap , then enter the amount.
 **Tip:** If there's an underlined monetary amount in a message, tap it to preset the payment.
2. Tap Pay, add a comment if you want, then tap .
3. Review the payment information. If you don't have sufficient funds in Apple Cash, you can pay the balance using your debit card in Wallet.
4. Authenticate the payment with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

You can cancel a payment that hasn't been accepted. Tap the payment bubble, then tap Cancel Payment.

Request a payment



 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Ask Kim for 26 dollars with Apple Pay." [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

You can also do the following:


1. In an iMessage conversation, tap .
 2. Enter the amount, then tap Request.
-

Apple Cash and sending and receiving payments through Apple Pay are services provided by Green Dot Bank, member FDIC.

Change message notifications on iPhone


In Settings , you can set up and manage message notifications for the Messages app  and filter unknown senders.

Manage notifications for messages

1. Go to Settings  > Notifications > Messages.
2. Choose options, including the following:
 - Turn Allow Notifications on or off.
 - Set the position and locations of message notifications.
 - Choose the alert sound for message notifications.
 - Choose when message previews should appear.

See [View and respond to notifications on iPhone](#).

Set the alert sound for messages

1. Go to Settings  > Sounds & Haptics (on supported models) or Sounds (other models).
2. Tap Text Tone, then do one of the following:
 - Tap Vibration, then choose an option.
 - Tap a sound below Alert Tones.
 - Tap Tone Store to download an alert sound from the iTunes Store.

See [Change iPhone sounds and vibrations](#).

Assign a different ringtone to a contact


1. Open Contacts, then select a contact.
2. Tap Edit, then tap Text Tone.
3. Choose an option below Alert Tones.

To allow alerts for messages sent by this contact even when Do Not Disturb is on, turn on Emergency Bypass.


Mute notifications for a conversation

1. In the Messages list, swipe left on the conversation.
 2. Tap Hide Alerts.
-

Block, filter, and report messages on iPhone

In the Messages app , you can block unwanted messages, filter messages from unknown senders, and report spam or junk messages.

Block messages from a specific person or number

1. In a Messages conversation, tap the name or number at the top of the conversation, then tap  at the top right.
2. Tap info.
3. Scroll down, then tap Block this Caller.

To view and manage your list of blocked contacts and phone numbers, go to Settings  > Messages > Blocked Contacts. See the Apple Support article [Block phone numbers, contacts, and emails on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).

Filter iMessage messages from unknown senders

Filtering messages from unknown senders turns off iMessage notifications from senders who aren't in your contacts and sorts the messages into the Unknown Senders tab in the Messages list.

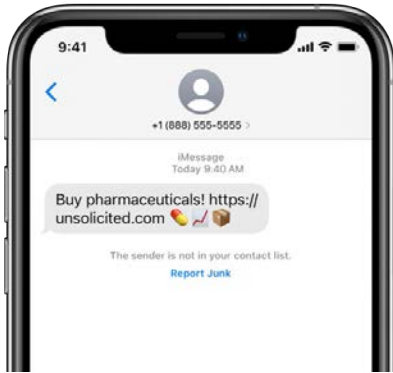
1. Go to Settings  > Messages.

2. Turn on Filter Unknown Senders.

Note: You can't open any links in a message from an unknown sender until you add the sender to your contacts or reply to the message.

Report spam or junk messages

With iMessage, a message you receive from someone who isn't saved in your contacts might be identified as possible spam or junk. You can report these messages to Apple.




In the message, tap Report Junk, then tap Delete and Report Junk.

The sender's information and the message are sent to Apple, and the message is permanently deleted from your device.

Note: Reporting junk or spam doesn't prevent the sender from sending messages, but you can block the number to stop receiving them.


To report spam or junk messages you receive with SMS or MMS, [contact your carrier](#).

Delete messages on iPhone

In the Messages app , you can delete messages and entire conversations. You can't recover a deleted conversation.

With Messages in iCloud, anything you delete from iPhone is also deleted from your other Apple devices where Messages in iCloud is turned on. See [Use Messages in iCloud](#).

Delete a message


1. Touch and hold a message bubble, then tap More.
 2. Select the message bubbles you want to delete, then tap .
-

Delete a conversation

1. In the Messages list, swipe left on the conversation.
 2. Tap Delete.
-

Music

Get music on iPhone

Use the Music app  to enjoy music stored on iPhone as well as music streamed over the internet. With an optional Apple Music subscription, you can listen to millions of songs ad-free and discover music together with friends.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding hearing loss, see [Important safety information for iPhone](#).


Get music to play on iPhone in the following ways:

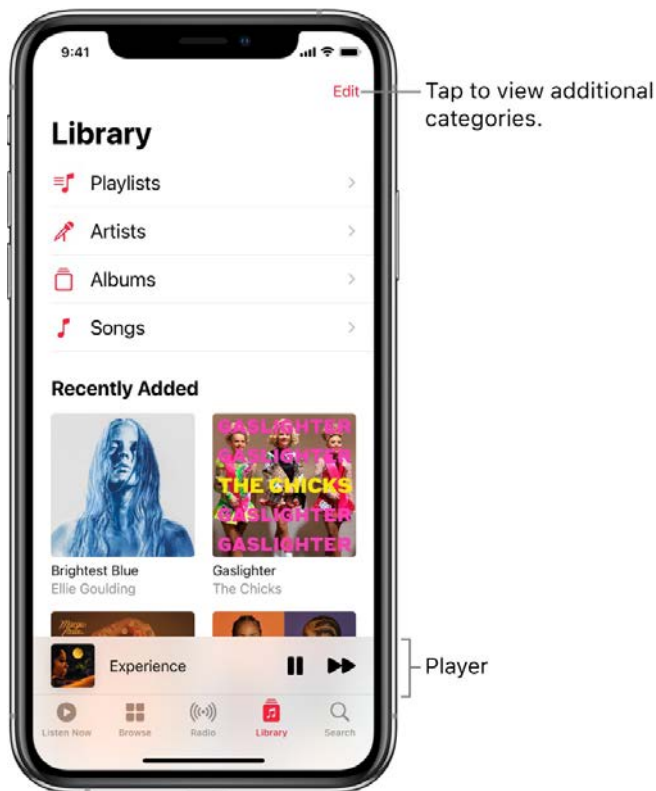
- *Become an Apple Music subscriber:* With a subscription and a Wi-Fi or cellular connection, stream as much music as you like from the Apple Music catalog and your music library. You can download songs, albums, and playlists, and share music with your friends. See [Subscribe to Apple Music on iPhone](#).

Note: Services and features aren't available in all countries or regions, and features may vary by region. Additional charges may apply when using a cellular connection.

- *Participate in Family Sharing:* Purchase an Apple Music Family membership, and everyone in your Family Sharing group can enjoy Apple Music. See [Share subscriptions and iCloud storage with family members on iPhone](#).
- *Purchase music from the iTunes Store:* See [Get music, movies, TV shows, and more in the iTunes Store on iPhone](#).
- *Sync music with Music (macOS 10.15 or later) or iTunes (macOS 10.14 or earlier and Windows PCs) on your computer:* See [Sync iPhone with your computer](#).
- *Listen to Apple Music radio:* Apple Music radio offers three worldwide radio stations broadcasting live on Apple Music—Apple Music 1, Apple Music Hits, and Apple Music Country. Apple Music radio is available on Apple and Android devices as well as popular web browsers at music.apple.com.

View albums, playlists, and more in Music on iPhone

In the Music app , the library includes music you added or downloaded from Apple Music, music and videos you synced to iPhone, TV shows and movies you added from Apple Music, and your iTunes Store purchases.



Browse and play your music

1. In the Music app, tap Library, then tap a category, such as Albums or Songs; tap Downloaded to view only music stored on iPhone.
2. Scroll to browse or swipe down the page and type in the search field to filter your results and find what you're looking for.
3. Tap an item, then tap Play, or tap Shuffle to shuffle an album or playlist.

You can also touch and hold the album art, then tap Play.



To change the list of categories, tap Edit, then select categories you'd like to add, such as Genres and Compilations. Tap any existing categories to remove them.

Sort your music


1. Tap Library, then tap Playlists, Albums, Songs, TV & Movies, or Music Videos.
 2. Tap Sort, then choose a sorting method, such as title, artist, recently added, or recently played.
-

Play music shared on a nearby computer

If a computer on your network shares music through Home Sharing, you can stream its music to your iPhone.


1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > Music, tap Sign In below Home Sharing, then sign in with your Apple ID.
2. Open the Music app , go to Library > Home Sharing, then choose a shared library.

Remove Apple Music songs from iPhone

Go to Settings  > Music, then turn off Sync Library.









The songs are removed from iPhone but remain in iCloud. Music you purchased or synced also remains.

Play music on iPhone

Use Now Playing in the Music app  to show lyrics and play, pause, skip, shuffle, and repeat songs. You can also use Now Playing to view album art.

Control playback

Tap the player near the bottom of the screen to show the Now Playing screen, where you can use these controls:

Control	Description
	Play the current song.
	Pause playback.
	Skip to the next song. Touch and hold to fast-forward through the current song.
	Return to the song's beginning. Tap again to play the previous song in an album or playlist. Touch and hold to rewind through the current song.
	Open the queue, then tap to repeat an album or playlist. Double-tap to repeat a single song.
	Open the queue, then tap to play your songs in random order. Tap again to turn off shuffle.
	Hide the Now Playing Screen button.
	Tap for more options.



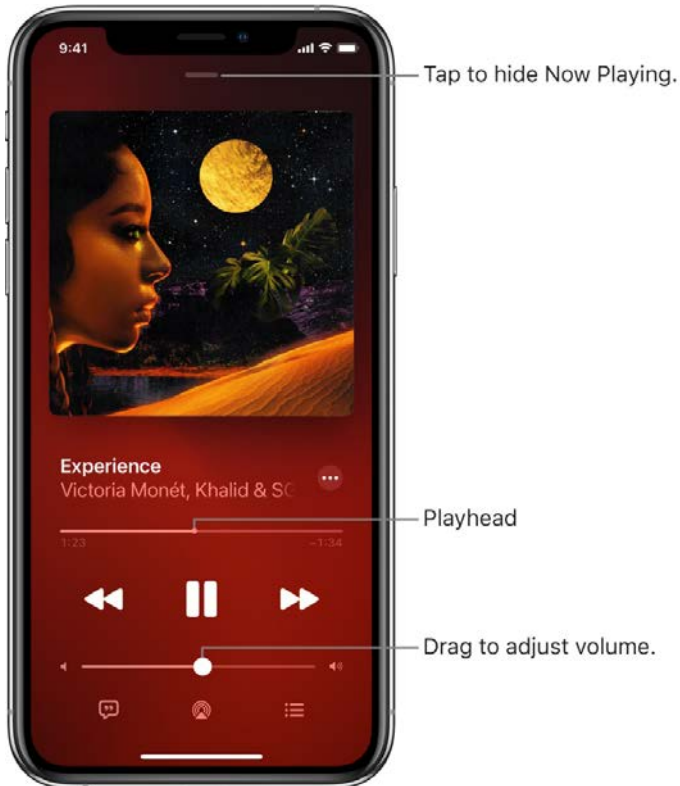
Show time-synced lyrics (lyrics not available for all songs).



Stream music to Bluetooth or AirPlay-enabled devices.



[See the queue.](#)



Adjust the volume, see song details, and more


The Now Playing screen contains additional options for controlling and accessing music.


- *Adjust volume:* Drag the volume slider.
You can also use the volume buttons on the side of iPhone.
- *Navigate to the artist, album, or playlist:* Tap the artist name below the song title, then choose to go to the artist, album, or playlist.
- *Scrub to any point in a song:* Drag the playhead.

See time-synced lyrics

Time-synced lyrics appear for many songs in Apple Music.

Tap the player to open Now Playing. Lyrics scroll in time with the music.

To hide lyrics, tap .

 **Tip:** Tap a specific lyric—the first line of the chorus, for example—to go to that part of the song.

To see all of a song's lyrics, tap , then tap View Full Lyrics.


Note: You need an Apple Music subscription to view lyrics.



Get audio controls from the Lock screen or when using another app

Open Control Center, then tap the audio card.


Stream music to Bluetooth or AirPlay-enabled devices

1. Tap the player to open Now Playing.
2. Tap , then choose a device.


See [Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers.](#)


Note: You can play the same music on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices, such as two or more HomePod speakers. You can also pair two sets of AirPods to one iPhone and enjoy the same song or movie along with a friend. See [Control audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices](#) and [Share audio with AirPods and Beats headphones](#).


Queue up your music on iPhone


Use the queue in the Music app  to see a list of upcoming songs, add songs and videos to the queue, and see what you've recently played.

Use the queue

1. Tap the player to open Now Playing.
2. Tap , then tap a song to play it and the songs that follow.

To reorder the list, drag .

3. Tap  again to hide the queue.


By default, Autoplay adds music similar to what you've last played to the end of the queue. To turn off Autoplay, tap .

Note: When you turn off Autoplay on a device that uses your Apple ID—your iPhone, for example—Autoplay is turned off on all other devices that use the same Apple ID.


Add music and videos to the queue

When browsing or playing music, touch and hold a song, album, playlist, or video, then choose an option.

- *Add music right after the currently playing item:* Tap Play Next.
- *Add music to the end of the queue:* Tap Play Last.

 **Tip:** If you're using HomePod to stream music and your friends are on the same Wi-Fi network, they can add and reorder items in the queue. To learn more about HomePod speaker access, see the [HomePod User Guide](#).

See what you've recently played

1. Tap the player to open Now Playing.
2. Tap , then swipe down to see your playing history.

To play a song in the history, tap it. To remove your playing history, tap Clear.

Listen to broadcast radio on iPhone

You can play thousands of broadcast radio stations on iPhone.

- *Ask Siri:* Summon Siri, then say something like, “Play Wild 94.9” or “Tune in to ESPN Radio.”
- *Search for a station:* Tap Search, enter the station in the search field, then tap a result to play the station.

You can search for stations by name, call sign, frequency, and nickname.

- *Choose a station in the Radio tab:* Tap Radio, swipe up, then choose a station below the Broadcast Radio heading.

Note: You don’t need a subscription to Apple Music to listen to broadcast radio. Broadcast radio isn’t available in all countries or regions and not all stations are available in all countries or regions.



Apple Music

Subscribe to Apple Music on iPhone

Apple Music is an ad-free streaming music service that lets you listen to millions of songs and your music library. As a subscriber, you can listen any time—online or off—and create your own playlists, get personalized recommendations, see music your friends are listening to, watch exclusive video content, and more.

Note: Apple Music features may vary by country or region. Learn [what’s available in your country or region](#).


Subscribe to Apple Music

You can subscribe to Apple Music when you first open the Music app ; to subscribe later, go to Settings  > Music, then tap Start Free Trial. Subscribers get access to the full Apple Music catalog, expert recommendations, and on-demand radio stations.

You can optionally purchase a [family subscription](#) that lets you and up to five other family members enjoy unlimited access to Apple Music on their devices. Qualified students can purchase a student subscription at a discounted price. See the Apple Support article [Get an Apple Music student subscription](#).

New subscribers can start a trial and cancel at any time. If you end your Apple Music subscription, you can no longer stream Apple Music songs or play Apple Music songs you downloaded.

Show or hide subscription features

Go to Settings  > Music, then turn Show Apple Music on or off.

Choose cellular data options for Music

Go to Settings  > Music > Cellular Data, then do any of the following:


- Turn streaming on or off
- Choose High Quality Streaming

High Quality Streaming uses more cellular data and songs may take longer to start playing.

- Allow downloading music over cellular
-


Edit your subscription

You can change your subscription plan or cancel your subscription.

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap  or your profile picture.
 2. Tap Manage Subscription.
-

If you're not a subscriber, you can use Music to listen to music synced to iPhone from a Mac or a Windows PC, play and download previous iTunes Store purchases, and listen to Apple Music 1 for free.

Find new music with Apple Music on iPhone

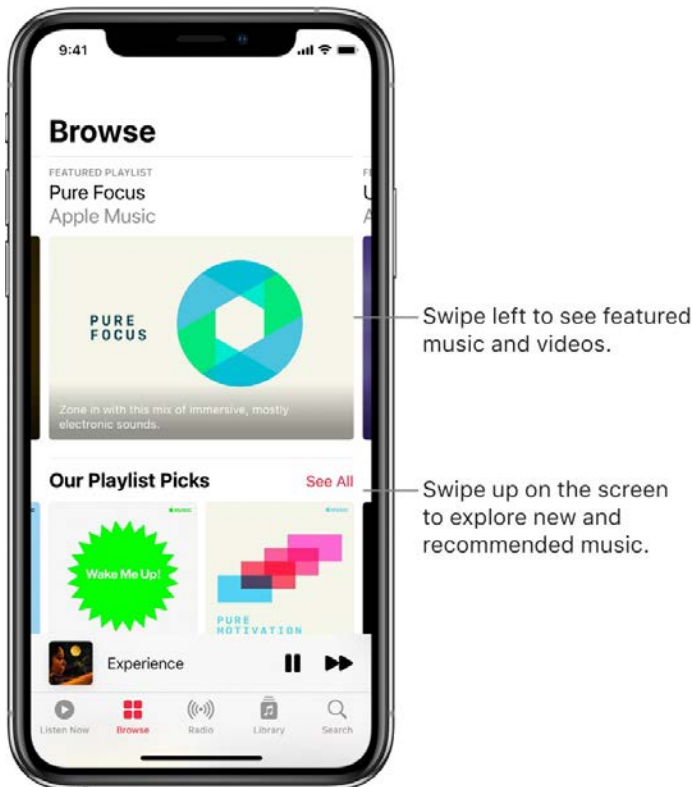
In the Music app , browse new and noteworthy music, music videos, playlists, and more.

Browse Apple Music


Tap Browse, then do any of the following:

- *Explore featured music:* Swipe through featured songs and videos at the top of the Browse screen.
- *Browse playlists created by music experts:* Tap one of the many playlists created by music experts.
- *Listen to the top songs from around the world:* Tap one of the Daily Top 100 playlists. These playlists reflect the day's most popular songs in countries across the globe.
- *Play music that matches your mood:* Tap a mood, such as Feel Good, Romance, or Party, then tap a playlist.
- *See what's hot:* Tap a song under the Hot Tracks heading. Swipe left to see more songs, or tap See All.
- *Explore new music:* Swipe through the songs found under New Music.
- *Browse your favorite genres:* Tap Genres, choose a genre, then tap a featured playlist, song, album, artist, radio station, or music video to enjoy music handpicked by music experts.

- *Play the day's most popular songs:* Tap Top Charts, then tap a song, playlist, album, or music video to play it. Tap All Genres at the top of the screen to see the top songs and music videos in a genre you choose.
- *Watch music videos:* Tap Music Videos, then tap a featured music video or playlist of music videos.
- *Listen to tracks from upcoming albums:* Tap an album under Coming Soon, then tap an available song to play it.




Add music to iPhone and listen offline

In the Music app , Apple Music subscribers can add and download songs and videos. Music you add to iPhone can be streamed when you have an internet connection. To play music when you're not connected to the internet, you must first download it.


Add music from Apple Music to your library

Do any of the following:

- Touch and hold a song, album, playlist, or video, then tap Add to Library.
- When viewing the contents of an album or playlist, tap Add to add the album or playlist, or tap  to add individual songs.

- When viewing recently searched items, search suggestions, or search results, tap **+** to add individual songs or music videos.
- On the Now Playing screen, tap **•••**, then tap Add to Library.

To delete music from the library, touch and hold the song, album, playlist, or music video, then tap Delete from Library.


Music you add to iPhone is also added to other devices where you're signed in to the iTunes Store and App Store using the same Apple ID and have iCloud Music Library turned on (go to Settings , then tap Music).

Add music to a playlist

1. Touch and hold an album, playlist, song, or music video.
2. Tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.

Download music from Apple Music to your iPhone

- *Download a song, album or playlist:* Tap  after adding music.


Note: You must turn on Sync Library to download music from Apple Music to your library (go to Settings  > Music, then turn on Sync Library).

- *Always download music:* Go to Settings > Music, then turn on Automatic Downloads.


Songs you add are automatically downloaded to iPhone.

- *See download progress:* On the Library screen, tap Downloaded Music, then tap Downloading.

Manage storage space


- *Free up music storage:* If iPhone is low on storage space, you can automatically remove downloaded music that you haven't played in a while. Go to Settings  > Music > Optimize Storage.
- *Remove music and videos stored on iPhone:* Touch and hold a song, album, playlist, music video, TV show, or movie that you've downloaded. Tap Remove, then tap Remove Downloads.

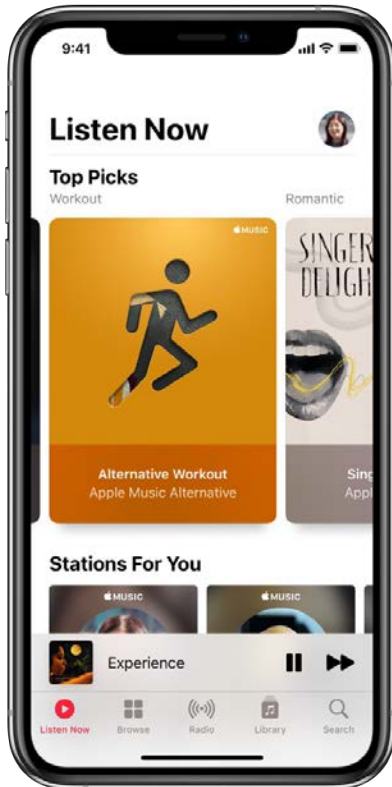
The item is removed from iPhone, but not from iCloud Music Library.

- *Remove all songs or certain artists from iPhone:* Go to Settings > Music > Downloaded Music, tap Edit, then tap  next to All Songs or the artists whose music you want to delete.

See recommended music on iPhone

Apple Music learns the music you like and recommends songs, albums, and playlists based on your tastes.

In the Music app , Listen Now helps you play and discover your favorite albums, playlists, interviews, and personal mixes, based on your taste.



Select your favorite genres and artists

When you first tap Listen Now, you're asked to tell Apple Music about your preferences. Apple Music uses these preferences when recommending music.

1. Tap the genres you like (double-tap those you love, and touch and hold the genres you don't care for).
2. Tap Next, then do the same with the artists that appear.

To add a specific artist who isn't listed, tap Add an Artist, then enter the artist's name.

Play music

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap a playlist or album.
2. Tap Play or tap the Shuffle button to shuffle the playlist or album.

You can also touch and hold a playlist or album, then tap Play.


Play songs from an artist's catalog

Go to an artist page, then tap  near the top of the screen.

Music plays songs from the artist's entire catalog, mixing hits and deep cuts.


Tell Apple Music what you love

Do any of the following:

- Touch and hold an album, playlist, or song, then tap Love or Suggest Less Like This.
- On the Now Playing screen, tap , then tap Love or Suggest Less Like This.

Telling Apple Music what you love and dislike improves future recommendations.

Rate music in your library


1. Go to Settings , then tap Music.
2. Turn on Show Star Ratings.
3. In Music, touch and hold a song in your library, tap Rate Song, then choose a rating from one to five stars.

Song ratings sync to all devices that use the same Apple ID.


This option appears only if you already have star ratings from a synced library on your device.

Tell Music to ignore your listening habits

You can prevent your listening habits from influencing Listen Now recommendations.

1. Go to Settings , then tap Music.
 2. Turn off Use Listening History.
-

Listen to radio on iPhone

Radio in the Music app  is the home of Apple Music radio, which features three world-class radio stations (Apple Music 1, Apple Music Hits, and Apple Music Country), the latest music from a variety of genres, and exclusive interviews. You can also listen to featured stations that have been crafted by music experts, and create your own custom stations from songs or artists you choose.

Listen to Apple Music radio

Tap Radio, then tap one of the currently playing Apple Music radio stations—Apple Music 1, Apple Music Hits, or Apple Music Country. No subscription is required to listen to Apple Music 1.

Note: Because Apple Music radio stations are live radio, you can't rewind or skip songs.

Listen to your favorite music genre

1. Tap Radio, then tap a genre listed below Radio by Genre.
 2. Tap a featured station.
-


Create a station

You can create a radio station based on a particular artist or song. Chances are, if you like that artist or song, you'll like the music the station plays.

1. Touch and hold an artist or song.
2. Tap Create Station.


To create a station in Now Playing, tap **...**, then tap Create Station.

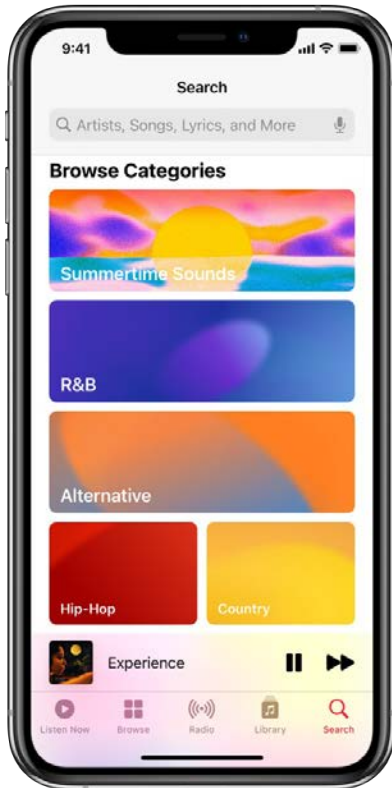
Search for music on iPhone

Using Search in the Music app , you can quickly browse through music categories, see recent searches, and search Apple Music or your library.

1. Tap Search, then do any of the following:
 - Tap a category such as Pop or Fitness.
 - Tap the search field, then tap something you recently chose while searching—a song or artist, for example.
 - Tap the search field, tap Apple Music, then enter a song, artist, album, playlist, radio show or episode, station, video, category, curator, or profile.
 - Tap the search field, tap Your Library, then enter a song, album, playlist, artist, video, compilation, or composer.
 2. Tap a result to play it.
-


You can search for a song in Apple Music based on its lyrics. In the search field, enter a few of the words you remember to find a song.

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: “Play the song with the lyrics” and then say a key phrase from the lyrics. [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)




Explicit lyrics and lyrics search aren't available in all countries or regions.

Create playlists on iPhone


In the Music app , you can organize music into playlists that you can share with your friends.


Create playlists to organize your music

1. Tap Library, tap Playlists, then tap New Playlist.
2. To more easily identify the playlist later, enter a name and description.
3. To give your playlist cover art, tap , then take a photo or choose an image from your photo library.

The image is used for the playlist's cover art.

4. Tap Add Music, then select music to add to the playlist.

You can also tap  in a track list or on the Now Playing screen, tap Add to a Playlist, then tap New Playlist.



To add songs to your library when you add them to a playlist, go to Settings  > Music, then turn on Add Playlist Songs.

Edit a playlist you created on iPhone

Tap the playlist, tap , tap Edit, then do any of the following:

- *Add more songs:* Tap Add Music, then choose music.

You can also touch and hold an album, playlist, song, or music video; tap Add to a Playlist; then choose a playlist.

- *Delete a song:* Tap , then tap Delete. Deleting a song from a playlist doesn't delete it from your library.
- *Change the song order:* Drag  next to a song.


Changes you make to your music library are updated across all your devices when Sync Library is turned on in Music settings. If you're not an Apple Music subscriber, the changes appear in your music library the next time you [sync with your computer](#).

Delete a playlist

Touch and hold the playlist, then tap Delete from Library.


You can also tap the playlist, tap , then tap Delete from Library.

See what your friends are listening to

When you're an Apple Music subscriber, you can see music your friends are listening to by following them. You can also see the playlists they've shared. Likewise, your followers can see your shared playlists and the music you're listening to. You see this information on your profile screen in the Music app .


Create a profile

When you first open Music, you're asked to set up a profile and start following friends. If you skipped this step, you can set up a profile at any time.

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap .
2. Tap Start Sharing with Friends.

Friends can now follow you.

View your profile

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap  or your profile picture.
 2. Tap View Profile at the top of the screen.
-

Follow your friends

There are several ways to follow people:

- Add friends when you set up your profile.
- After you set up your profile, swipe to the bottom of the profile screen, tap Follow More Friends, then tap Follow next to those you want to follow.

You can follow friends who are in your contacts list and who use Apple Music, and Facebook friends who have linked their social media accounts to Apple Music.

- On the profile screen, touch and hold a profile picture, then tap Follow.
- Tap Search, enter a friend's name, tap it in the results, then tap Follow.


Note: Your friends must have a profile for you to find them using search.

To see the people you're following and those who follow you, open the profile screen, then swipe up.

Some profiles may appear with a lock on the profile picture, which means that you need to ask for and receive permission from that person to become a follower. After your request is accepted, you see their shared playlists and the music they're listening to.

Respond to follow requests

You can allow everyone to follow you, or just people you choose. You receive follow requests only if you choose who can follow you.

1. Tap Listen Now, then tap  or your profile picture.
2. Tap View Profile.
3. Tap Edit, then tap People You Approve if you want to be followed only by people you choose.
4. Tap Follow Requests, then accept or decline the requests.

You may receive follow requests in other ways—as a link in an email or a text message, for example. To accept, tap the link.

Stop following and block followers



- *Stop following:* Touch and hold the profile picture of a person you follow, then tap Unfollow.

- *Block followers:* Touch and hold a profile picture, then choose Block.

People you block won't see your music or be able to find your profile. They can still listen to your shared playlists if they've added them to their library.

Share music with followers

By default, your followers see the playlists you create, but you can specify some playlists not to be shared.


1. Tap Listen Now, then tap  or your profile picture.
2. Tap View Profile.
3. Tap Edit, then turn playlists on or off.
4. Drag  to reorder them.

Your followers will see the playlists you create on your profile unless you turn off those playlists you don't want to share. You can turn off this option when you create a playlist or later, when you edit the playlist.

To share playlists with people who don't follow you, touch and hold a playlist, then tap Share Playlist.

Note: If you make changes to music you share—edit or stop sharing a playlist, for example—those changes are reflected on your followers' devices.

Hide music from your followers


1. Tap Listen Now, then tap  or your profile picture.
2. Tap View Profile.
3. Touch and hold the playlist or album (below Listening To).
4. Tap Hide from Profile.

The listening history for this item won't appear in your profile nor be visible to the people who follow you. If you don't want your followers to see any of the music you listen to, tap Edit on the profile screen, then turn off Listening To.

See what others are listening to



Tap Listen Now, then do any of the following:

- *See what your friends are listening to:* Scroll down to Friends Are Listening To, then tap an item to play it.

- *Listen to a mix of songs your friends are listening to:* Swipe left on Made For You, then tap Friends Mix.
 - *See what a follower or person you follow is listening to:* Tap  or your profile picture, then tap View Profile. Tap a person's profile picture to see shared playlists and music they're listening to. You also see their followers and the people they follow.
-

Share your profile

You can share your profile using email, Messages, or another app you choose.


1. Tap Listen Now, then tap  or your profile picture.
2. Tap View Profile.
3. Tap , tap Share, then choose a sharing option.

You can also share the profile of anyone you follow, or who follows you.

Report a concern

If you have a concern about a follower, touch and hold their profile picture, then tap Report a Concern.

Use Siri to play music on iPhone

You can use Siri to control music playback in the Music app .

Summon Siri, then make your request. Siri supports a wide variety of commands:

- *Play Apple Music:* You can play any song ("Play 'Experience' by Victoria Monét"), artist ("Play Lianne La Havas"), album, playlist, or station. You can play music on AirPlay 2-enabled devices in a specific room ("Play the latest album by Alicia Keys in the living room"). You can also play popular songs from different years ("Play the top songs from 1990").
- *Let Siri be your personal DJ:* Say something like "Play my Chill Mix" or "Play something I like."
- *Add music from Apple Music to your library:* (Apple Music subscription required) Say, for example, "Add 'Gaslighter' by The Chicks to my Library." Or while playing something, say "Add this to my library."
- *Add a song or album to a playlist:* While playing a song, say something like "Add this song to my Workout playlist" or "Add this album to my Sunday Morning playlist."
- *Find out more about the current song:* Say "What's playing?", "Who sings this song?", or "Who is this song by?"


- *Play songs based on their lyrics:* Say “Play the song with the lyrics” and then say a key phrase from the lyrics.

[Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

Siri can also help you find music in the iTunes Store. See [Get music, movies, TV shows, and more in the iTunes Store on iPhone.](#)


Change the way music sounds on iPhone

Change the way music sounds on iPhone with EQ, volume limit settings, and Sound Check.

- *Choose an equalization (EQ) setting:* Go to Settings  > Music > EQ.
- *Normalize the volume level of your audio:* Go to Settings > Music, then turn on Sound Check.

News

Get started with News on iPhone

The News app  collects all the stories you want to read, from your favorite sources, about the topics that interest you most. To personalize News, you can choose from a selection of publications (called *channels*) and topics such as Entertainment, Food, and Science.

The more you read, the better News understands your interests. Siri learns what’s important to you and suggests stories you might like. You can also receive notifications about important stories from channels you follow.


You can also [subscribe to Apple News+](#), which includes hundreds of magazines, popular newspapers, and premium digital publishers.


The News app and Apple News+ aren’t available in all countries, regions, or languages.

Note: You need a Wi-Fi or cellular connection to use News.


Personalize your news

When you [follow a channel or topic](#), related stories appear more often in the Today feed, and the channel or topic appears in the Following tab.


1. Open News for the first time, tap Following, then tap  next to channels and topics you want to follow.

If there are channels or topics that you don't want to appear in your feed, tap  to block them or to stop News from suggesting them.

When you block a channel or topic, its stories are filtered out of the Today feed and Today widget. However, you may see stories from channels you've blocked in Top Stories and other locations that feature stories chosen by Apple News editors. Tap Following > Blocked Channels & Topics to see the channels and topics you've blocked.

2. Tap Discover Channels & Topics at the bottom of the screen, then tap  for each channel and topic you want to follow.

To stop following a channel or topic, swipe it to the left, then tap Unfollow.

To easily follow specific channels and topics, tap the search field at the top of the screen, enter the channel or topic's name, then tap  in the results below.

Get notifications

Some channels you follow may send notifications about important stories.

1. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email below Manage.
2. Turn on notifications for your preferred channels.

If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can get notifications when new issues are available. If you turn on Apple News Today, you receive a link to the show notes associated with an episode of Apple News Today, as you listen to that episode.

Receive Apple News newsletters


You can choose to receive newsletters in your email inbox from Apple News editors highlighting top stories. Newsletters can be personalized based on your interests.

1. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email.
2. Swipe to the bottom of the screen, then turn on Apple News Newsletter.

To stop receiving newsletters, return to the Notifications & Email screen, then turn off Apple News Newsletter.


Note: Personalized newsletters aren't available in all countries or regions.

See stories only from the channels you follow

Go to Settings , tap News, turn on Restrict Stories in Today, then confirm your choice.

Note: Restricting stories significantly limits the variety of stories that appear in the Today feed and all other feeds. For example, if you restrict stories and follow only one entertainment-related channel, your Entertainment topic feed will contain stories only from that channel. When you restrict stories, you don't see Top Stories and Trending Stories.

See News widgets on iPhone


You can easily see the day's top and trending stories from the News app , as well as stories about a topic of your choosing, just by tapping the Today or Topic widget.

Access stories from News widgets

In the Today or Topic widget, tap a story headline to open the story.


See [Add widgets to the iPhone Home Screen](#).

See news stories chosen just for you on iPhone

The Today feed in the News app  presents top stories selected by Apple News editors, the best stories from the channels and topics you follow, and stories and issues from [Apple News+](#). The Today feed also includes stories suggested by Siri, trending stories that are popular with other News readers, and more. Depending on your location, the Today feed can also include Apple News Today audio briefings, and local news and weather forecasts.

Note: Apple News Today audio briefings and local news and weather forecasts aren't available in all countries or regions.

Access stories in the Today feed

- *Read more stories within a group:* Tap the arrow at the bottom of the group.
 - *Play a video:* Tap  in the thumbnail.
The associated article opens and the video plays.
 - *Get newer stories:* Pull down to refresh the Today feed with the latest stories.
-





Follow, unfollow, block, and unblock channels and topics

You can influence what appears in the Today feed by following and blocking channels and topics.

1. Do any of the following:

- *Open a channel feed:* Touch and hold a story, then tap Go to Channel. Or tap a story in the Today feed, then tap the channel name at the top of the story.
- *Open a topic feed:* Tap the topic title—Movies or Travel, for example.

2. At the top of the feed, do any of the following:

- *Follow:* Tap .
- *Unfollow:* Tap , then tap Unfollow Channel or Unfollow Topic.
- *Block:* Tap , then tap Block Channel or Block Topic.
- *Unblock:* Tap , then tap Unblock Channel or Unblock Topic.

Tell News what kind of stories you prefer


1. Tap Today.

2. Touch and hold a headline, then tap Suggest More Like This or Suggest Less Like This.

Stop suggesting specific channels and topic groups in the Today feed

Suggested channels and topic groups may appear in the Today feed, but you can stop suggestions for a group.

1. Tap Today.

2. Tap  in a channel or topic group, then tap Stop Suggesting.

The channel or topic isn't blocked, but News stops displaying the story group in Today.

Read stories in News on iPhone

You can read and share the stories in the News app  on iPhone.



Read a story


Tap a story to read it. While viewing a story, you have these options:

- *Read the next story:* Tap → in the lower right of the screen or swipe left.
- *Read the previous story:* Tap ← in the lower right of the screen or swipe right.
- *Return to the list of stories:* Swipe from the left edge.
- *Tell News what stories you prefer:* When viewing a story that's not part of a News+ issue, tap 👍 or 👎 at the bottom of the story. Your feedback is taken into account for future recommendations.

If you're reading a story in a News+ issue, tap 🗨️, then tap Suggest More Like This or Suggest Less Like This.

- *Change the text size:* Tap A A, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story and all other stories in the channel. (Not available in all channels.)
- *Share a story:* Tap 🗨️, then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.
- *Report a concern:* If you believe that a story you're viewing is mislabeled, inappropriate, offensive, or doesn't display properly, tap 🗨️, swipe up, then tap Report a Concern.

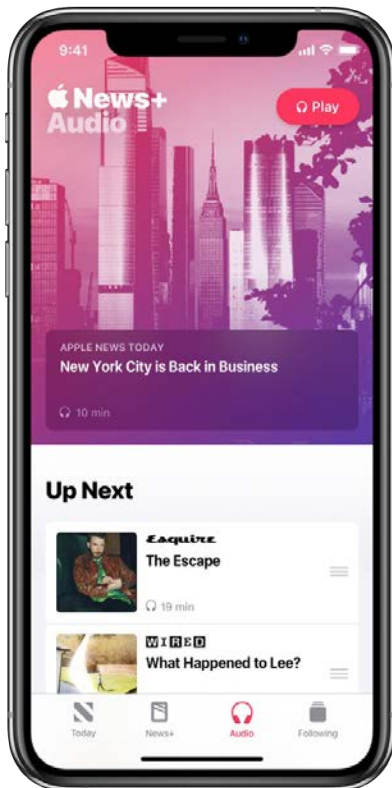
In Apple News+ issues in PDF format, the Suggest More Like This, Suggest Less Like This, Save Story, and Report a Concern options aren't available. See [Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues on iPhone](#).

Web stories delivered through an RSS feed show a preview. To view an RSS story in full, swipe up. To always view the full story, go to Settings , tap News, then turn off Show Story Previews.


Listen to Apple News Today on iPhone

In the News app , you can listen to Apple News Today, an audio briefing of the day's top stories hosted by Apple News editors. [With an Apple News+ subscription](#), you can also listen to audio versions of select Apple News+ stories.

Note: The audio feature isn't available in all countries or regions.



Play Apple News Today

1. Tap , then tap an episode of Apple News Today.

Apple News Today briefings also appear in the Today feed.

2. For [more playback controls](#), tap the mini player at the bottom to open the full-screen player.


3. To return to the mini player, swipe down to minimize the full-screen player.

To close the full-screen player, tap **⋮**, then tap Close Audio Player. To close the mini player, touch and hold the player, then tap Close Audio Player.

If you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, a preview of an Apple News+ audio story plays when the briefing concludes.

Apple News+

Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone

In the News app , subscribe to Apple News+, a service you can use to read hundreds of magazines, popular newspapers, and content from premium digital publishers for a single monthly price. In some countries and regions you can additionally [listen to audio versions of select stories](#).

Note: Apple News+ and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions.

As a subscriber, you have unlimited access to current and available back issues of publications, and you can download content for offline reading and share stories and issues with others.



Start a free trial

The first time you subscribe to Apple News+, you receive a free 1-month trial. After the trial concludes, you pay a monthly subscription fee for continued access to the bundle of Apple News+ publications. To begin, follow these steps:

1. Tap any subscribe or free trial button shown in a magazine or story in News.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

You may be asked to sign in with your Apple ID.

You're billed monthly for your subscription until you cancel. If you use [Family Sharing](#), up to five other family members can access your Apple News+ subscription for no additional charge.

If you go to Settings  > [your name] > Media & Purchases, tap , then tap Sign Out of Store, you can only access free stories—you must sign back in to read stories and issues that require an Apple News+ subscription.

Cancel your subscription

Tap Following, swipe up, tap Subscriptions below the Manage heading, then do one of the following:



- *Apple News+ only:* Tap Cancel Subscription.
 - *Apple News+ and individual channels:* Select Apple News+, then tap Cancel Subscription.
-

Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues on iPhone

To get the most out of Apple News+, follow your favorite publications, browse through current and back issues, or download issues to read later (not available in all countries or regions).

Follow and unfollow publications

You follow an Apple News+ publication by following its channel. Do any of the following:

- Tap the Today tab or News+ tab, tap a story or issue from an Apple News+ publication, tap the publication's name at the top of the screen, then tap .
- Tap the Following tab, tap the search field at the top of the screen, enter the publication's name, then tap .
- Tap News+, tap Browse the Catalog or a category at the top of the screen, then tap Follow below the publication's cover.

To unfollow a publication, tap Following, swipe left, then tap Unfollow.

Browse Apple News+ issues and stories

Stories and issues from Apple News+ appear in the News+ feed, the Today feed, and channel feeds. Stories (but not issues) can also be found in topic feeds and search results. To access entire issues, tap the News+ tab at the bottom of the screen, where you can do any of the following:

- *View all available publications:* Tap Browse the Catalog near the top of the screen.
- *View a specific content category:* Tap a category such as Business & Finance, Entertainment, or Sports near the top of the screen. Tap Featured to view a group of publications chosen by Apple News editors. Swipe left to see more categories.
- *View new and recent issues:* The most recent issue you've read appears below Reading Now. Below Recent you see the newest issue you've most recently read, you've most recently downloaded, or was most recently published from a channel you follow.

Note: If you block an Apple News+ publication, its issues are removed from My Magazines.

To open a story or issue, do any of the following:

- Tap an issue cover in the News+ or Today feed.
 - Tap Following, enter the name of the Apple News+ channel in the search field, tap the channel, then tap the issue.
 - Follow a link to a story or issue that someone shared with you.
-

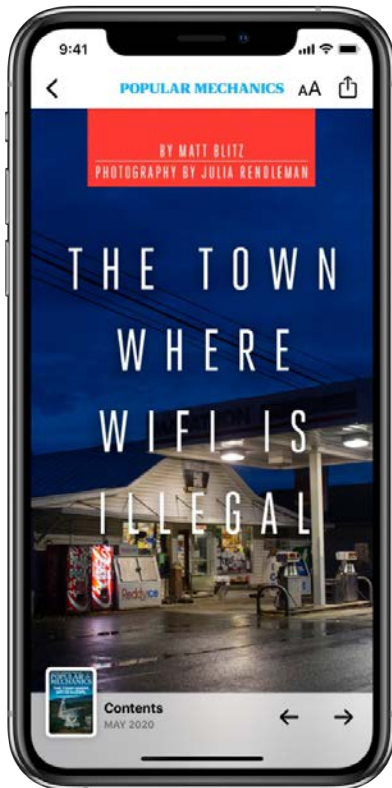
Access back issues

1. Tap Following, then tap a channel you follow, or search for a channel, then tap it.

2. Below Recent Issues, swipe to the issue you want to read, then tap to open it.

To browse all of the channel's available back issues, swipe through the issues at the top of the screen.

Read Apple News+ issues



Open the issue, where you can do any of the following:

- *View the table of contents:* Tap the cover thumbnail at the bottom left of the screen.
- *Navigate to a story:* In an issue in Apple News Format, tap the story link in the table of contents. In a PDF issue, tap the thumbnail of the page you want to view.
- *Page through an issue:* Swipe left or tap → to go to the next story, or swipe right or tap ← to go to the previous story.
- *Change the text size:* In stories in Apple News Format, tap **A**, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story and all other stories in the channel. In PDF issues, pinch to zoom.

Download an Apple News+ issue

To download issues to read offline, do any of the following:

- Tap the News+ tab. In My Magazines or a category, tap **⋮** below the issue cover, then tap Download Issue.
- Tap Following, tap the magazine channel feed, tap **⋮** below the issue cover in the Recent Issues group, then tap Download Issue.

News automatically downloads the most recent issue of magazines you follow when iPhone has sufficient storage space and is connected to Wi-Fi. You can download issues only if you're a subscriber.

Manually remove an Apple News+ issue

Under most conditions, automatically downloaded issues are removed from iPhone after 30 days. To remove them sooner, follow these steps:


1. Tap the News+ tab.
2. In My Magazines, tap **⋮** below the issue cover, tap Remove, then do one of the following:
 - *Remove an issue, but leave its cover in My Magazines:* To free up some space on iPhone, tap Remove Download. The issue's cover remains so you can easily access it again from My Magazines.
 - *Remove an issue and its cover:* Tap Remove from My Magazines to remove the issue's cover and content from your device and from any other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

If an issue is in My Magazines, but not downloaded, tap Remove from My Magazines to remove its cover from My Magazines on all the devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

To remove all downloaded issues, tap Following > History, tap Clear, then tap Clear All.


When storage on iPhone is limited, issues may be automatically removed sooner than 30 days. See the Apple Support article [Read magazines with Apple News+](#).

Listen to audio stories on iPhone

If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can listen to audio versions of select stories in the News app .

Note: The audio feature isn't available in all countries or regions.


Browse audio stories

Tap  to see Apple News+ audio stories and Apple News Today. Subscribers see the following headings:

- *Up Next*: Stories you're currently listening to or have added to the Up Next queue.
- *For You*: Stories recommended to you based on your interests.
- *Recently Played*: Stories you've listened to.

If you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, previews of audio stories appear under Previews For You.

Play audio stories








1. Tap , then tap a story.
2. For more playback controls, tap the mini player at the bottom to open the full-screen player.
3. To return to the mini player, swipe down to minimize the full-screen player.

To close the full-screen player, tap **⋮**, then tap Close Audio Player. To close the mini player, touch and hold the player, then tap Close Audio Player.


Audio stories can also appear in a feed. Tap a story to read it. To listen to the story, tap Listen at the top of the story (Apple News+ subscription required). If you're not a subscriber, you can listen to a preview of the story.

Note: If you're an Apple News+ subscriber, when you tap a story, it's downloaded to iPhone so you can listen to it later without an internet connection.

Use any of the following controls:

Control	Description
	Play
	Pause
	Next story
	Jump back 15 seconds
	Choose a faster or slower playback speed
	Stream audio to other devices
	Choose more actions such as place a story next or last in the queue, read a story, or share it

Add stories to Up Next

Tap , then do one of the following:

- Tap **⋮** next to a story from For You, then choose Play Next or Play Last.
- Touch and hold a story, then tap Play Next to play the story right after the currently playing story. Tap Play Last to add the story to the end of the queue.

You can use **☰** to reorder stories in your Up Next queue.

Read, share, and delete audio stories


When browsing a list of stories in the Audio tab, touch and hold a story to see the following options:

- Share
- Play Next
- Play Last
- Read Story
- Delete
- Suggest More Like This
- Suggest Less Like This
- Follow Channel
- Block Channel
- Report a Concern

Some of these options are also available when you swipe left or right on a story.


When listening to a story, open the full-screen player, then tap **⋮** to see a list of similar options.

Search for stories in News on iPhone


The News app  keeps track of a wide variety of channels, topics, and stories, which makes it easy to find content that interests you.

Search for channels, topics, or stories


1. Tap Following, then tap the search field.
2. Enter any of the following:
 - The name of a channel, such as CNN or *Washington Post*
 - A topic, such as fashion, business, or politics
 - A story, such as the rescue of a baby elephant

In the results list, tap  to follow the channel or topic.

Save stories in News on iPhone

In the News app , you can save stories to read later, online or offline.

Save a story

When reading a story, tap , swipe up, then tap Save Story.

To read a saved story, tap Following, tap Saved Stories, then tap the story. To delete a saved story, swipe the story left.


Check and edit your reading history

Tap Following, tap History, then do any of the following:

- *Read a story:* Tap the story.
- *Delete a story:* Swipe the story left.
- *Remove your reading history:* Tap Clear, then tap Clear History.
- *Remove the information used to create recommendations:* Tap Clear, then tap Clear Recommendations.
- *Clear everything:* Tap Clear, then tap Clear All.


Your News history, recommendation information, saved stories, and downloaded issues and audio stories are removed from all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Note: Story titles remain in Saved Stories, but you must be online to read the stories.

If you clear recommendations, and Show Siri Suggestions in App is on in Settings  > News > Siri & Search, recommendations based on your Safari and app usage and your reading habits in News are cleared. To prevent News from suggesting stories based on your Safari and app usage, turn off Show Siri Suggestions in App.

When you clear your history, the identifier used by Apple News to report statistics to news publishers is also reset. You can reset the identifier at any time by going to Settings > News, then turning on Reset Identifier.

How to subscribe to individual channels on iPhone

In the News app , in addition to [subscribing to Apple News+](#), you can subscribe to individual publications from select publishers. There are three ways to access these subscriptions in News:

- *Subscribe within News:* You can purchase a subscription directly in News. In a channel that offers subscriptions, tap the subscription button.
- *Access an existing subscription purchased from the iTunes Store or the App Store:* If subscriptions you've bought in the iTunes Store or App Store as in-app purchases through publishers' apps are also available in News, you're automatically granted access in News. See the [Buy additional app features with in-app purchases and subscriptions website](#).
- *Access an existing subscription purchased from a publisher:* If you've purchased a subscription directly from a publisher's website or from the publisher's app on a non-Apple device, the publisher may allow you to sign in to your account in News to access your subscription there.


To sign in, tap a story that requires a subscription to read, then tap *Already a Subscriber?* Enter the user name and password for your existing subscription.

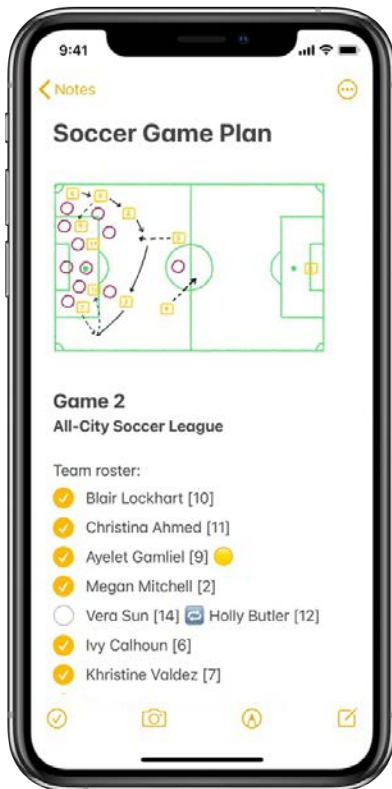
When you subscribe to a channel, you automatically follow it, and stories from the channel appear in the Today feed.

To cancel a subscription, tap the *Following* tab, swipe up, tap *Subscriptions* below the *Manage* heading, select the subscription, then tap *Cancel Subscription*.


Notes

Take notes on iPhone


Use the Notes app  to jot down quick thoughts or organize detailed information with checklists, images, web links, scanned documents, handwritten notes, and sketches.



Create and format a new note

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: “Create a new note.” [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

Or do the following:



1. Tap , then enter your text.

The first line of the note becomes the note’s title.


2. To change the formatting, tap **Aa**.

You can apply a heading style, bold or italic font, a bulleted or numbered list, and more.

3. To save the note, tap Done.


 **Tip:** To choose a default style for the first line in all new notes, go to Settings  > Notes > New Notes Start With.

Add a checklist


In a note, tap , then do any of the following:

- *Add items to the list:* Enter text, then tap return to enter the next item.


- *Increase or decrease the indentation:* Swipe right or left on the item.
- *Mark an item as complete:* Tap the empty circle next to the item to add a checkmark.
- *Reorder an item:* Touch and hold the empty circle or checkmark next to the item, then drag the item to a new position in the list.
- *Manage items in the list:* Tap the list to see the menu, tap ►, tap Checklist, then tap Check All, Uncheck All, Delete Checked, or Move Checked to Bottom.

To automatically sort checked items to the bottom in all your notes, go to Settings  > Notes > Sort Checked Items, then tap Automatically.


Add or edit a table

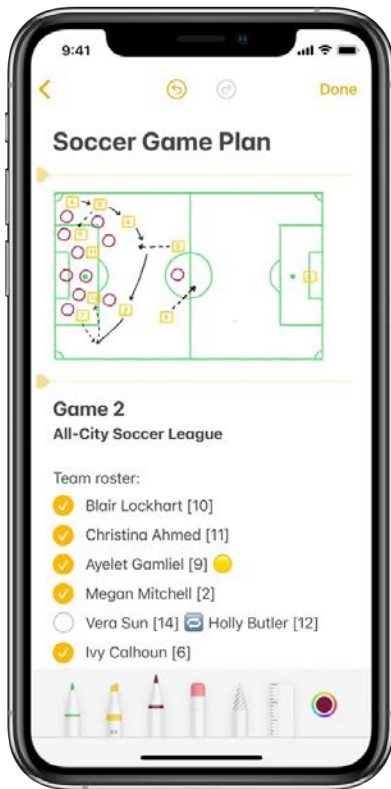
In a note, tap , then do any of the following:

- *Enter text:* Tap a cell, then enter your text. To start another line of text in the cell, touch and hold the Shift key and tap next.
- *Move to the next cell:* Tap next. When you reach the last cell, tap next to start a new row.
- *Format a row or column:* Tap a row or column selection handle, then choose a style, such as bold, italic, underline, or strikethrough.
- *Add or delete a row or column:* Tap a row or column selection handle, then choose to add or delete.
- *Move a row or column:* Touch and hold a row or column selection handle, then drag it to a new position.
- *See more columns:* If the table becomes wider than your screen, swipe right or left on the table to see all the columns.


To remove the table and convert its contents to text, tap a cell in the table, tap , then tap Convert to Text.


Draw or write in Notes on iPhone

Use the Notes app  to draw a sketch or jot a handwritten note with your finger. You can choose from a variety of Markup tools and colors and draw straight lines with the ruler.




Draw or write in a note



1. Tap , then draw or write with your finger.
2. [Use the Markup tools](#) to change colors or tools.
3. To adjust the handwriting area, drag the resize handle up or down.

 **Tip:** You can search handwritten text (in supported languages) in Notes. If the note doesn't have a title, the first line of handwritten text becomes the suggested title. To edit the title, scroll to the top of the note, then tap Edit.


Select and edit drawings and handwriting

1. In the Markup toolbar, tap the Lasso tool  (between the eraser and ruler).
 2. Touch and hold to select drawings and handwriting, then drag to expand the selection.
Adjust the selection by dragging the handles if necessary.
 3. Tap the selection, then choose Cut, Copy, Delete, Duplicate, Copy as Text, or Insert Space Above.
If you choose Copy as Text, you can paste the transcribed text in another note or another app.
-


Show lines or grids in notes

- *In an existing note:* Tap , tap Lines & Grids, then choose a style.
 - *Choose the default style for all new notes:* Go to Settings  > Notes > Lines & Grids.
-


Add attachments to notes on iPhone

In the Notes app , you can attach photos, videos, and scanned documents. You can even add info from other apps—maps, links, documents, and more.


Add a photo or video

1. In a note, tap .
2. Choose a photo or video from your photo library, or take a new photo or video.
3. To change the preview size of attachments, touch and hold an attachment, then tap Small Images or Large Images.



 **Tip:** To [draw on a photo](#), tap the photo, then tap .

To save photos and videos taken in Notes to the Photos app, go to Settings  > Notes, then turn on Save to Photos.








Scan a document into a note using the camera

1. In a note, tap , then choose Scan Documents.

2. Position iPhone so that the document page appears on the screen; iPhone automatically captures the page.


To manually capture the page, tap  or press a volume button. To turn the flash on or off, tap .




3. Scan additional pages, then tap Save when you're done.
4. To make changes to the saved document, tap it, then do any of the following:
 - *Add more pages:* Tap .
 - *Crop the image:* Tap .
 - *Apply a filter:* Tap , then choose to scan the page as a color, grayscale, or black-and-white document, or as a photo.
 - *Rotate the image:* Tap .
 - *Mark up the document:* Tap , tap , then [use the Markup tools](#) to add annotations or your signature.
 - *Delete the scan:* Tap .

Add info from another app to a note


You can add information from another app as an attachment to a note—for example, a location in Maps, a webpage in Safari, a PDF in Files, or a screenshot.

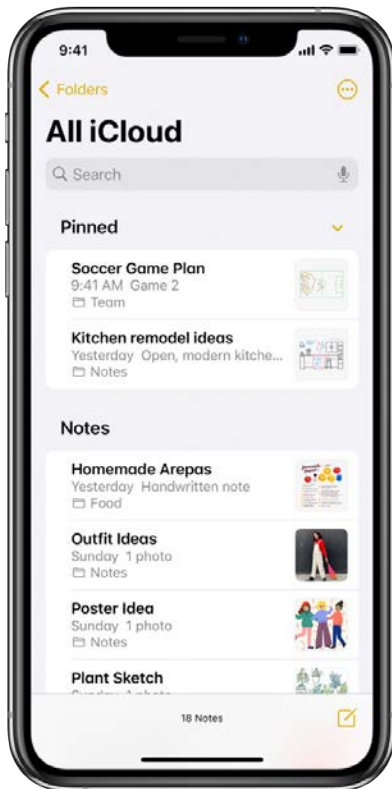
1. In the other app, open the item you want to share (for example, a map or webpage).
 2. Tap Share or , then tap Notes.
 3. Save the item to a new note or choose an existing note.
-

View all attachments in Notes

1. Above the notes list, tap , then tap View Attachments to see thumbnails of drawings, photos, links, documents, and other attachments. (Attachments in locked notes aren't shown.)
 2. To go to a note with a specific attachment, tap the attachment thumbnail, then tap Show in Note.
-




Search and organize your notes in folders on iPhone

In the Notes app , you can search all your notes for typed and handwritten text, objects that appear in images, and text in scanned documents. You can also organize your notes into folders and pin the important notes to the top of the list.



Create, rename, move, or delete a folder or subfolder


In the folders list, do any of the following:





- *Create a folder:* Tap New Folder, then name your folder.
- *Create a subfolder:* Touch and hold a folder, then drag it onto another folder.
- *Rename a folder:* Tap the folder, tap , tap Rename, then enter a new name.
- *Move a folder:* Swipe left on the folder, tap , then choose a new location. Or touch and hold the folder, then drag it to a new location. The folder becomes a subfolder if you drag it onto another folder.
- *Delete a folder:* Swipe left on the folder, then tap . Or touch and hold the folder, then tap Delete.

If you change your mind, open the Recently Deleted folder to recover the notes.

Sort, move, pin, delete, or view notes in the gallery view

In a notes list, do any of the following:

- *Change the folder view:* Tap , then choose View as Gallery or View as List.

- *Change the sort order of a folder:* Tap , tap "Sort by," then choose Date Edited, Date Created, or Title. To choose a default sorting method for all your folders, go to Settings  > Notes > Sort Notes By.
- *Move a note to a different folder:* Swipe left on the note, then tap . Or touch and hold the note, tap Move, then choose a folder.
- *Pin an important note to the top of the list:* Touch and hold the note, then tap Pin Note. Or swipe right on the note, then tap the pin.
- *Delete a note:* Swipe left on the note, then tap . Or touch and hold the note, then tap Delete.

If you change your mind, open the Recently Deleted folder to recover the note.


Search your notes

You can search for typed and handwritten text, objects that appear in images, and text in scanned documents.


1. Swipe down on the notes list to reveal the search field.
2. Tap the search field, then enter what you're looking for. You can also choose a suggested search, such as "Notes with Drawings," then enter additional text to refine your search.

If a note is locked, only its title appears in the search results. The search includes handwritten text (in supported languages), photos, and scanned documents.


Search within a note for typed and handwritten text

1. Open the note you want to search.
 2. Tap , then tap Find in Note.
 3. Type the text you're looking for in the search field.
-

Share notes and collaborate on iPhone

In the Notes app , you can send a copy of a note to a friend. You can also invite people to collaborate on a note or on a folder of notes in iCloud, and everyone will see the latest changes.



Send a copy of a note

1. Open the note you want to share.
 2. Tap , tap Send a Copy, then choose how to send your note.
-

Collaborate on a note

When you share a note in iCloud, all the collaborators see everyone's changes. Everyone you share with must be signed in with their Apple ID to edit or view the note.



Note: You can't collaborate on a locked note.

1. Do one of the following:
 - In the notes list, swipe left on the note you want to share, then tap .
 - Open the note you want to share, tap , then tap Share Note.
 2. Tap Share Options, then choose "Can make changes" or "View only."
 3. Choose how to send your invitation (for example, using Mail or Messages).
-


Collaborate on a Notes folder

When you share a folder of notes in iCloud, all the collaborators see everyone's changes. People who are allowed to make changes can create or edit notes, add attachments, and even create subfolders if they're using iCloud.

Note: You can't collaborate on a folder with locked notes.


1. Do one of the following:
 - In the folder list, swipe left on the folder you want to share, then tap .
 - Open the folder you want to share, tap , then tap Share Folder.
 2. Tap Share Options, then choose "Can make changes" or "View only."
 3. Choose how to send your invitation (for example, using Mail or Messages).
-

Add or remove collaborators or stop collaborating

Tap , then do any of the following:

- *Add people:* Choose a sharing option.
 - *Remove people:* Swipe left on the collaborator you want to remove, then tap Remove.
 - *Change permissions:* Tap Share Options, then choose "Can make changes" or "View only."
 - *Stop sharing:* When you choose this option, the shared note or folder is deleted from the devices of the other participants.
-


Lock your notes on iPhone

In the Notes app , you can lock notes with a password to protect your sensitive information. Notes uses a single password for all your locked notes in an account (for example, your iCloud account), on all your devices.

You can use Face ID (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID (on an iPhone with a Home button) as a convenient way to access your locked notes; however, don't rely on Face ID or Touch ID as the only means of unlocking your notes. If you update your Face ID or Touch ID settings, or want to change your Notes password, you have to reenter your Notes password. For this reason, it's strongly recommended that you add a password hint when you create the password.

Set up your notes password

The password you set applies to all notes you lock from now on.

1. Go to Settings  > Notes > Password.
2. If you have multiple accounts, choose the account you want to set a password for.
3. Enter a password and add a hint to help you remember it.

For added convenience, you can also turn on Face ID or Touch ID.


Important: If you forget your notes password, and you can't use Face ID or Touch ID to unlock your notes, you won't be able to view your locked notes, and Apple can't help you regain access to those locked notes.

You can reset your notes password, but this doesn't give you access to previously locked notes. The new password applies to all notes you lock from now on. Go to Settings > Notes > Password > Reset Password.

See the Apple Support article [Lock notes on your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Mac](#).

Lock a note

You can only lock notes on your device and notes in iCloud. You can't lock notes that have PDFs, audio, video, Keynote, Pages, Numbers documents attached, or notes that sync with other accounts. You can't lock an iCloud note that has collaborators.

1. Open the note, then tap .
2. Tap Lock.

When a note is locked, the title remains visible in the notes list.

To remove a lock from a note, tap , then tap Remove.

Open a locked note


Opening one locked note opens all your locked notes in the same account for several minutes so you can easily jump into another note or copy and paste information from other apps.

1. Tap the locked note, then tap View Note.
2. To open the note, use Face ID, Touch ID, or your Notes password.

To lock your notes again, do one of the following:

- Tap the lock icon at the top of the screen.
 - Tap Lock Now at the bottom of the notes list.
 - Close the Notes app.
 - Lock your iPhone.
-

Change your Notes settings on iPhone


Customize your preferences for the Notes app  in Settings. You can store your notes in iCloud, access Notes from the Lock Screen, and more.

Keep your notes up to date on all your devices with iCloud

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud, then turn on Notes.

Your iCloud notes—and any changes you make to them—appear on your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Mac where you're signed in with your Apple ID.


Change your Notes settings

Go to Settings  > Notes, then adjust any of the following:


- *Default Account:* Choose the default account for Siri and the Notes widget.
 - *“On My iPhone” Account:* Notes in this account appear only on your iPhone. Your notes in iCloud aren't affected.
 - *Access Notes from Lock Screen:* Choose Always Create New Note or Resume Last Note. Or turn it off to prevent access from the Lock Screen.
-

Phone

Make a call on iPhone

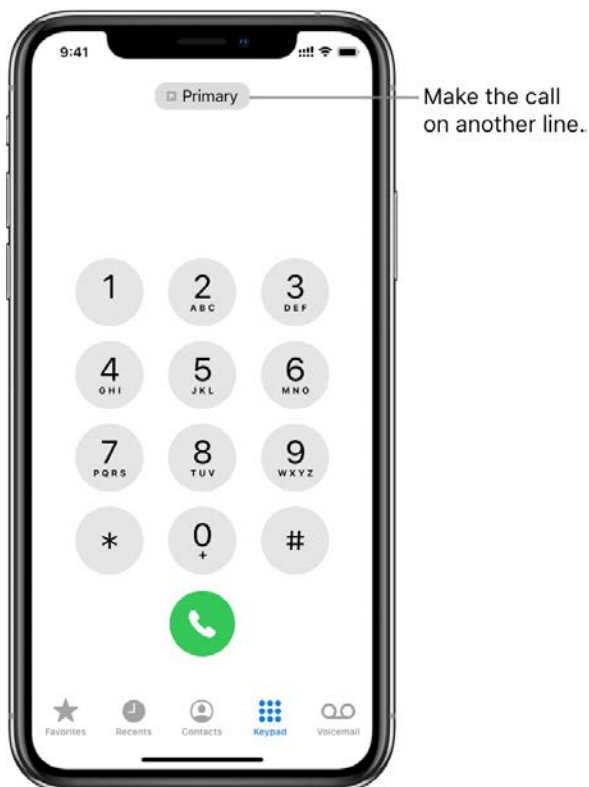
To start a call in the Phone app , dial the number on the keypad, tap a favorite or recent call, or choose a number in your Contacts list.

Dial a number




 **Ask Siri.** Say “call” or “dial” followed by a number. Speak each digit separately—for example, “four one five, five five five...” For the 800 area code in the U.S., you can say “eight hundred.” [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

Or do the following:


1. Tap Keypad.



2. Do any of the following:

- *Use a different line:* On models with Dual SIM, tap the line at the top, then choose a line.
- *Enter the number using the keypad:* If you make a mistake, tap .
- *Redial the last number:* Tap  to see the last number you dialed, then tap  to call that number.
- *Paste a number you've copied:* Tap the phone number field above the keypad, then tap Paste.
- *Enter a soft (2-second) pause:* Touch and hold the star (*) key until a comma appears.
- *Enter a hard pause (to pause dialing until you tap the Dial button):* Touch and hold the pound (#) key until a semicolon appears.
- *Enter a "+" for international calls:* Touch and hold the "0" key until "+" appears.

3. Tap  to start the call.

To end the call, tap .


Call your favorites

1. Tap Favorites, then choose one to make a call.


On models with Dual SIM, iPhone chooses the line for the call in the following order:

- The preferred line for this contact (if set)
- The line used for the last call to or from this contact
- The default voice line

2. To manage your Favorites list, do any of the following:

- *Add a favorite:* Tap , then choose a contact.
- *Rearrange or delete favorites:* Tap Edit.

Redial or return a recent call

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Redial that last number" or "Return my last call." [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)


You can also do the following:

1. Tap Recents, then choose one to make a call.

2. To get more info about a call and the caller, tap ⓘ.

A red badge indicates the number of missed calls.

Call someone on your Contacts list


 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: “Call Eliza’s mobile.” [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

Or do the following:

1. In the Phone app, tap Contacts.
2. Tap the contact, then tap the phone number you want to call.

On models with Dual SIM, the default voice line is used for the call unless you set a preferred line for this contact.

Change your outgoing call settings

1. Go to Settings  > Phone.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Turn on Show My Caller ID:* (GSM) Your phone number is shown in My Number. For FaceTime calls, your phone number is displayed even if caller ID is turned off.
 - *Turn on Dial Assist for international calls:* (GSM) When Dial Assist is turned on, iPhone automatically adds the correct international or local prefix when you call your contacts and favorites.

For information about making international calls (including rates and other charges that may apply), contact your carrier.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information for iPhone](#).


Make emergency calls on iPhone

In case of emergency, use iPhone to quickly call for help. With Emergency SOS, you can quickly and easily call for help and alert your emergency contacts.

If you [share your Medical ID](#), iPhone can send your medical information to emergency services when you call or text 911 or use Emergency SOS (U.S. only).


Note: For emergency help in the U.S., you can send a text message to 911 (not available in all locations). See the Apple Support article [Text 911 on iPhone or Apple Watch](#).

Dial the emergency number when iPhone is locked

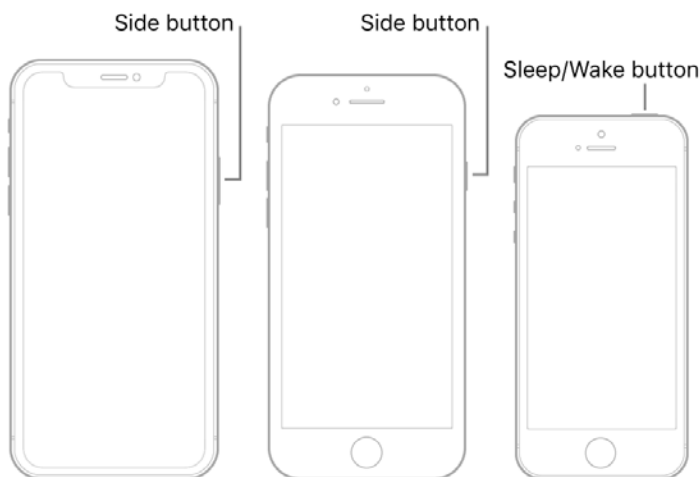
1. On the Passcode screen, tap Emergency.
 2. Dial the emergency number (for example, 911 in the U.S.), then tap .
-

Use Emergency SOS (all countries or regions except India)

- *On an iPhone with Face ID, iPhone SE (2nd generation), iPhone 8, and iPhone 8 Plus:* Press and hold the side button and either volume button. Continue to hold the buttons when the Emergency SOS slider appears, until iPhone plays a warning sound and starts a countdown. (To skip the countdown, drag the Emergency SOS slider.) When the countdown ends, iPhone calls emergency services.

Or, you can enable iPhone to start Emergency SOS when you click the side button five times. Go to Settings  > Emergency SOS, then turn on Call with Side Button.

- *On other iPhone models:* Click the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model) five times, then drag the Emergency SOS slider.



After the emergency call ends, iPhone alerts your emergency contacts that you made a call and sends them your current location (if available).


Use Emergency SOS (India)

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Triple-click the side button. Or, if Accessibility Shortcut is turned on, press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag Emergency SOS.
- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Triple-click the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model).

By default, iPhone plays a warning sound, starts a countdown, then calls the emergency services.

After the emergency call ends, iPhone alerts your emergency contacts that you made a call and sends them your current location (if available).

Change your Emergency SOS settings

1. Go to Settings  > Emergency SOS.
 2. Do any of the following:
 - *Turn Auto Call on or off:* When Auto Call is on and you start Emergency SOS, iPhone plays a warning sound, starts a countdown, then calls the emergency services in your region.
 - *Turn the countdown sound on or off:* When Countdown Sound is on, iPhone plays a warning sound even in silent mode or when Do Not Disturb is turned on.
 - *Manage your emergency contacts:* Tap Set Up Emergency Contacts in Health or Edit Emergency Contacts in Health. See [Create and share your Medical ID in Health on iPhone](#).
-

Important information about emergency calls on iPhone

- You can use iPhone to make an emergency call in many locations, provided that cellular service is available, but you should not rely on it for emergencies. Some cellular networks may not accept an emergency call from iPhone if iPhone isn't activated, if iPhone isn't compatible with or configured to operate on a particular cellular network, or (when applicable) if iPhone doesn't have a SIM card or the SIM card is PIN-locked.
- In certain countries or regions, your location information (if determinable) may be accessed by emergency service providers when you make an emergency call.
- Review your carrier's emergency calling information to understand the limits of emergency calling over Wi-Fi.
- With CDMA, when an emergency call ends, iPhone enters *emergency call mode* for a few minutes to allow a call back from emergency services. During this time, data transmission and text messages are blocked.
- After making an emergency call, certain call features that block or silence incoming calls may be disabled for a short period of time to allow a callback from emergency services. These include Do Not Disturb, Silence Unknown Callers, and Screen Time.
- On an iPhone with Dual SIM, if you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for a line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.


Answer or decline incoming calls on iPhone



You can answer, silence, or decline an incoming call. If you decline a call, it goes to voicemail. You can respond with a text or remind yourself to return the call.



Answer a call

Do one of the following:

- Tap .
- If iPhone is locked, drag the slider.
- On your EarPods, press the center button.

 **Tip:** You can have iPhone announce all incoming calls or only calls you receive while you're using headphones or Bluetooth in your car. Go to Settings  > Phone > Announce Calls.


Silence a call

Press the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model) or either volume button.

You can still answer a silenced call until it goes to voicemail.

Decline a call and send it directly to voicemail

Do one of the following:


- Press the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model) twice quickly.
- Tap .
- Swipe up on the call banner.

You can also swipe down on the call banner for more options.



Do any of the following:

- Tap Remind Me, then choose when you want a reminder to return the call.
- Tap Message, then choose a default reply or tap Custom.

To create your own default replies, go to Settings  > Phone > Respond with Text, then tap any default message and replace it with your own text.

Note: In some countries or regions, declined calls are disconnected without being sent to voicemail.

See also [Respond to a second call on the same line.](#)

While on a call on iPhone

When you're on a phone call, you can switch the audio to the speaker or a Bluetooth device. If you get another incoming call, you can respond or ignore it.



Adjust the audio during a call

To change the volume, press the volume buttons on the side of iPhone. Or swipe down on the call banner, then do any of the following:

- *Mute*: Tap the mute button.
 - *Put the call on hold*: Touch and hold the mute button.
 - *Talk handsfree*: Tap the audio button, then choose an audio destination.
-

Use another app while on a call

1. Go to the Home Screen, then open the app.
 2. To return to the call, tap the green call indicator at the top of the screen.
-

Respond to a second call on the same line

If you're on a call and receive a second call, do one the following:

- *Ignore the call and send it to voicemail:* Tap Ignore.
- *End the first call and answer the new one:* When using a GSM network, tap End + Accept. With a CDMA network, tap End and when the second call rings back, tap Accept, or drag the slider if iPhone is locked.
- *Put the first call on hold and answer the new one:* Tap Hold + Accept.

With a call on hold, tap Swap to switch between calls, or tap Merge Calls to talk with both parties at once. See [Start a conference call](#).

Note: With CDMA, you can't switch between calls if the second call was outgoing, but you can merge the calls. You can't merge calls if the second call was incoming. If you end the second call or the merged call, both calls are terminated.

On models with Dual SIM, note the following:

- Wi-Fi Calling must be turned on for a line to enable that line to receive calls while the other line is in use for a call. If you receive a call on one line while the other is in use for a call, and no Wi-Fi connection is available, iPhone uses the cellular data of the line that's in use for the call to receive the other line's call. Charges may apply. The line that's in use for the call must be permitted for data use in your Cellular Data settings (either as the default line, or as the non-default line with Allow Cellular Data Switching turned on) to receive the other line's call.
- If you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for a line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.

Start a conference call

With GSM, you can set up a conference call with up to five people (depending on your carrier).

Note: Conference calls may not be available if your call is using VoLTE (Voice over LTE) or Wi-Fi Calling.


1. While on a call, tap Add Call, make another call, then Tap Merge Calls.

Repeat to add more people to the conference.

2. During the conference call, do any of the following:

- *Talk privately with one person:* Tap ⓘ, then tap Private next to the person. Tap Merge Calls to resume the conference.
 - *Add an incoming caller on the same line:* Tap Hold Call + Answer, then tap Merge Calls.
 - *Drop one person:* Tap ⓘ next to a person, then tap End.
-

Check your voicemail on iPhone

In the Phone app , Visual Voicemail (available from select carriers) shows a list of your messages. You can choose which ones to play and delete without listening to all of them. A badge on the Voicemail icon indicates the number of unheard messages.

Voicemail transcription (beta; available only in certain countries or regions) shows your messages transcribed into text. Transcription is limited to voicemails in English received on your iPhone with iOS 10 or later. Transcription depends on the quality of the recording.


Note: Voicemail, Visual Voicemail, and Voicemail transcription are available from select carriers in select countries or regions.

Set up voicemail

The first time you tap Voicemail, you're asked to create a voicemail password and record your voicemail greeting.

1. Tap Voicemail, then tap Set Up Now.
 2. Create a voicemail password.
 3. Choose a greeting—Default or Custom; if you choose Custom, you can record a new greeting.
-


Play, share, or delete a voicemail message

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: “Do I have any new voicemail?” or “Play the voicemail from Eliza.” [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)



Or do the following:

1. Tap Voicemail, then tap a message.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Play the message:* Tap .

Messages are saved until you delete them or your carrier erases them.

- *Share the message:* Tap .
- *Delete the message:* Tap .


Important: In some countries or regions, deleted messages may be permanently erased by your carrier. Your voice messages may also be deleted if you change your SIM card.

To recover a deleted message, tap Deleted Messages, tap the message, then tap Undelete.

Check your messages when Visual Voicemail isn't available

- *On your iPhone:* Tap Voicemail, then follow the instructions.
 - *On another phone:* Dial your own mobile number, press * or # (depending on your carrier) to bypass your greeting, then enter your voicemail password.
-

Change your voicemail settings

- *Change your greeting:* Tap Voicemail, then tap Greeting.
- *Change your voicemail password:* Go to Settings  > Phone > Change Voicemail Password, then enter the new password.

If you forgot your voicemail password, contact your wireless carrier.

- *Change the alert for new voicemail:* Go to Settings > Sounds & Haptics or Settings > Sounds.
-

Select ringtones and vibrations on iPhone


You can set the default ringtone and assign distinctive ringtones to certain people. You can also use vibrations and turn the ringer off.

Change the alert tones and vibrations

See [Change iPhone sounds and vibrations](#).

iPhone comes with ringtones that play for incoming calls. You can also [purchase more ringtones in the iTunes Store](#).

Assign a different ringtone to a contact

1. Open the Contacts app .
 2. Select a contact, tap Edit, tap Ringtone, then choose a ringtone.
-


Turn the ringer on or off

Flip the Ring/Silent switch to put iPhone in ring mode or silent mode. Clock alarms still play when iPhone is in silent mode.

To temporarily silence incoming calls, [turn on Do Not Disturb](#).

Make calls using Wi-Fi on iPhone

When your iPhone has a low cellular signal, use Wi-Fi Calling to make and receive calls through a Wi-Fi network.

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > Cellular.
2. If your iPhone has Dual SIM, choose a line (below Cellular Plans).
3. Tap Wi-Fi Calling, then turn on Wi-Fi Calling on This iPhone.
4. Enter or confirm your address for emergency services.

Note: Emergency calls on your iPhone are routed through cellular service when available. In the event that cellular service isn't available, and you have enabled Wi-Fi Calling, emergency calls may be made over Wi-Fi, and your device's location information may be used for emergency calls to aid response efforts, regardless of whether you enable Location Services. Some carriers may use the address you registered with the carrier when signing up for Wi-Fi Calling as your location. When connected to Wi-Fi calling, your iPhone may not receive emergency alerts.

When Wi-Fi Calling is available, "Wi-Fi" is displayed after your carrier name in the status bar, and all your calls go through Wi-Fi.

Note: If the Wi-Fi connection is lost when you make calls, calls switch automatically to your carrier's cellular network using VoLTE (Voice over LTE), if available and turned on. See [View or change cellular settings on iPhone](#). (VoLTE calls also switch to Wi-Fi when a Wi-Fi connection becomes available.) Contact your carrier for feature availability.


Set up call forwarding and call waiting on iPhone

You can set up call forwarding and call waiting on iPhone if you have cellular service through a GSM network.

If you have cellular service through a CDMA network, contact your carrier for information about enabling and using these features.

1. Go to Settings  > Phone.

2. Tap any of the following:

- **Call Forwarding:**  appears in the status bar when call forwarding is on. You must be in range of the cellular network when you set iPhone to forward calls, or calls won't be forwarded.

On models with Dual SIM, choose a line.

- **Call Waiting:** If you're on a call and call waiting is turned off, incoming calls go directly to voicemail.


On models with Dual SIM, call waiting works only for incoming calls on the same line, unless the other line has Wi-Fi calling enabled and a data connection is available. See [Set up cellular service on iPhone](#).


For information about conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) when the line is busy or not in service, contact your carrier for setup information.

Avoid unwanted calls on iPhone

You can avoid unwanted calls by blocking certain people and sending unknown and spam callers directly to voicemail.

Block voice calls, FaceTime calls, and messages from certain people

In the Phone app , do any of the following.


- Tap Favorites, Recents, or Voicemail. Tap  next to the number or contact you want to block, scroll down, then tap Block this Caller.
 - Tap Contacts, tap the contact you want to block, scroll down, then tap Block this Caller.
-

Manage your blocked contacts

1. Go to Settings  > Phone > Blocked Contacts.

2. Tap Edit.


Send unknown and spam callers to voicemail

Go to Settings  > Phone, then tap any of the following:

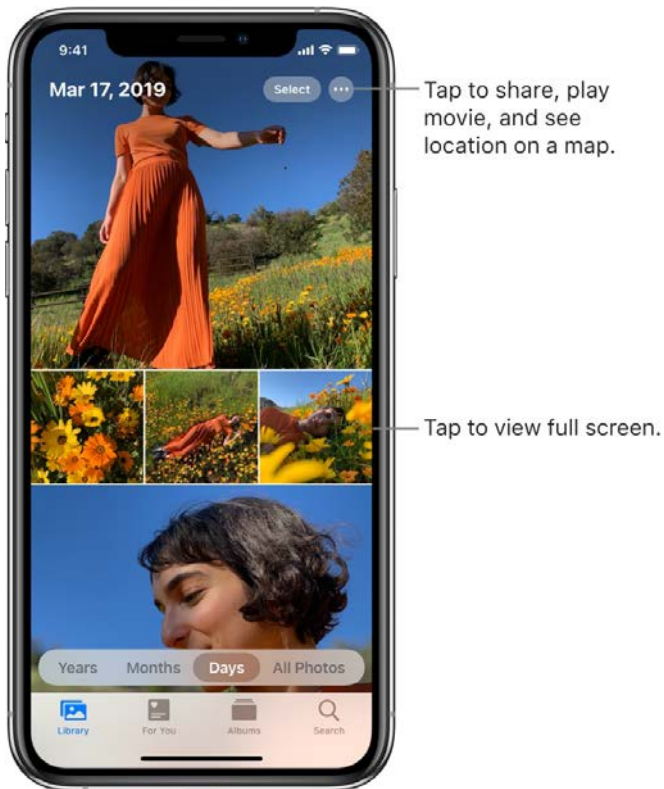
- *Silence Unknown Callers*: You get notifications for calls from people in your contacts, recent outgoing calls, and Siri Suggestions.
 - *Call Blocking & Identification*: Turn on Silence Junk Callers (available with certain carriers) to silence calls identified by your carrier as potential spam or fraud.
-

Photos

View photos and videos on iPhone

Use the Photos app  to view your photos and videos organized by years, months, days, and all photos. Tap the For You, Albums, and Search tabs to find photos organized by different categories and to create albums that you can share with family and friends.


- *Library*: Browse your photos and videos organized by days, months, and years.
- *For You*: A personalized feed shows your memories, shared albums, featured photos, and more.
- *Albums*: View albums you created or shared, and your photos organized by album categories—for example, People & Places and Media Types.
- *Search*: Type in the search field to search for photos by date, location, caption, or objects they contain. Or, browse photos already grouped by important people, places, and categories.



Browse photos

The photos and videos on your iPhone are organized by Years, Months, Days, and All Photos in the Library tab. You can rediscover your best shots in Years, relive significant events in Months, focus on unique photos in Days, and view everything in All Photos.

To browse your photos, tap the Library tab, then select any of the following:



- *Years*: Quickly locate a specific year in your photo library, and see significant events highlighted in a slideshow.
- *Months*: View collections of photos that you took throughout a month, organized by significant events—like a family outing, social occasion, birthday party, or trip.
- *Days*: View your best photos in chronological order, grouped by the time or place the photos were taken.
- *All Photos*: View all of your photos and videos; tap  to zoom in or out, view photos by aspect ratio or square, filter photos, or see photos on a map.

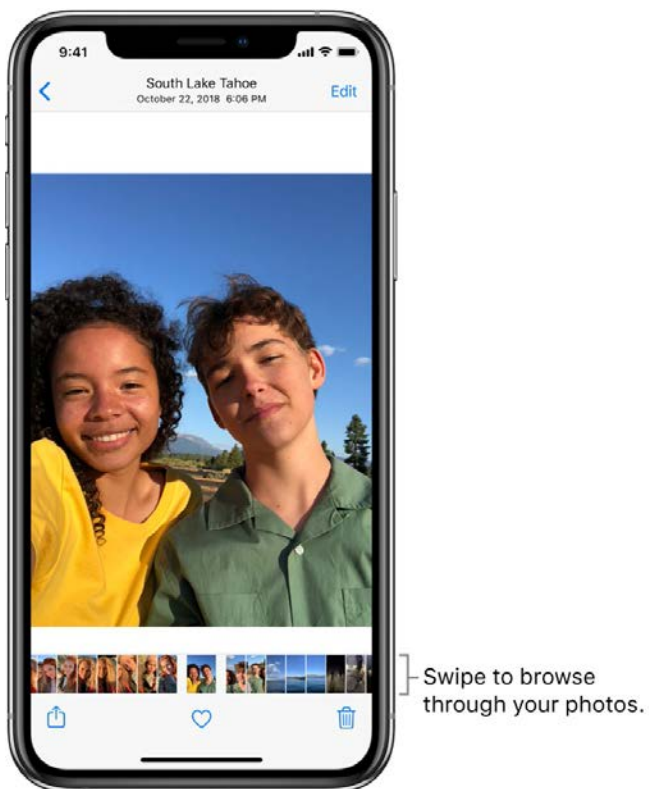
Photos removes similar photos and clutter (such as screenshots, whiteboards, and receipts) from Years, Months, and Days views. To see every photo and video, tap All Photos.


View individual photos

Locate individual photos in the Library tab—tap All Photos, or browse by Years, Months, or Days, then tap a photo thumbnail to view it in full screen. You can also view photos in the Albums tab, or tap the Search tab to look for photos by specific search terms, such as “beach” or “selfie.”

While viewing a photo in full screen, you can do any of the following:

- *Zoom in or out:* Double-tap or pinch out to zoom in—while zoomed in, drag to see other parts of the photo; double-tap or pinch closed to zoom out.
- *Share:* Tap , then choose how you want to share; see [Share photos and videos on iPhone](#).
- *Add to favorites:* Tap  to add the photo to your Favorites album in the Albums tab.



Tap  or drag the photo down to continue browsing or return to the search results.

Add captions and view photo and video details


Captions add context to your photos and videos, and you can search for photos and videos by captions when you use Search. Select a photo or video, then swipe up to view a caption, or add a caption in the text field below the image.

When you swipe up on a photo or video, you also see the following details:

- Effects you can add to a Live Photo; see [Edit a Live Photo](#).
- People identified in your photo; see [Find people in Photos](#).
- Where the photo was taken; see [Browse photos by location](#).
- A link to view other photos taken nearby.

In Shared Albums, you can add comments and likes to photos and videos. Your comments and likes are shared with the album subscribers. See [Share iPhone photos with Shared Albums in iCloud](#).

Play a Live Photo

A Live Photo  is a moving image that captures the moments just before and after a picture is taken.

1. Open a Live Photo.
2. Touch and hold the photo to play it.

See [Take a Live Photo](#).

View photos in a Burst shot

Burst mode in Camera takes multiple high-speed photos so that you have a range of photos to choose from. In Photos, Burst shots are saved together in a single photo thumbnail. You can view each photo in the Burst, then select your favorites to save separately.

1. Open a Burst photo.
2. Tap Select, then swipe through the collection of photos.
3. To save specific photos, tap each photo to select it, then tap Done.
4. Tap Keep Everything to keep the Burst and the photos you selected, or tap Keep Only [number of] Favorites to keep only the ones you selected.

See [Take Burst shots](#).

Play a video


As you browse your photo library in the Library tab, videos auto-play while you scroll. Tap a video to begin playing it in full screen without sound, then do any of the following:

- Tap the player controls below the video to pause, play, unmute, and mute; tap the screen to hide the player controls.
- Double-tap the screen to toggle between full screen and fit-to-screen.




Play and customize a slideshow

A slideshow is a collection of your photos, formatted and set to music.

1. Tap the Library tab.
2. View photos by All Photos or Days, then tap Select.
3. Tap each photo you want to include in the slideshow, then tap .
4. From the list of options, tap Slideshow.
5. Tap the screen, then tap Options in the bottom right to change the slideshow theme, music, and more.

To stream a slideshow or video to a TV, see [Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone](#).


Delete and hide photos and videos on iPhone

In the Photos app , you can delete photos and videos from your iPhone or hide them in the Hidden album. You can also recover photos you recently deleted. When you use iCloud Photos, any changes you make are saved across all your devices.


See [Use iCloud Photos on iPhone](#).

Delete or hide a photo or video


In Photos, tap a photo or video, then do either of the following:

- *Delete*: Tap  to delete a photo from your iPhone and other devices using the same iCloud Photos account.

Deleted photos and videos are kept in the Recently Deleted album for 30 days, where you can recover or permanently remove them from all devices.

- *Hide*: Tap , then tap Hide in the list of options.

Hidden photos are moved to the Hidden album. You can't view them anywhere else.


To remove the Hidden album from Albums, go to Settings  > Photos > then turn off Hidden Album.

Recover or permanently delete deleted photos

To recover deleted photos, or to permanently delete them, do the following:

1. Go to the Albums tab, then tap Recently Deleted under Utilities.
 2. Tap Select, then choose the photos and videos you want to recover or delete.
 3. Choose Recover or Delete at the bottom of the screen.
-

Edit photos and videos on iPhone

Use the tools in the Photos app  to edit photos and videos on your iPhone. When you use iCloud Photos, any edits you make are saved across all your devices.

See [Use iCloud Photos on iPhone](#).

Adjust light and color


1. In Photos, tap a photo or video thumbnail to view it in full screen.



2. Tap Edit, then swipe left under the photo to view the editing buttons for each effect such as Exposure, Brilliance, and Highlights.
3. Tap a button, then drag the slider to adjust the effect.





The level of adjustment you make for each effect is displayed by the outline around the button, so you can see at a glance which effects have been increased or decreased.

4. To review the effect, tap the effect button to see the shot before and after the effect was applied (or tap the photo to toggle between the edited version and the original).
5. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.


Tip: Tap  to automatically edit your photos or videos with effects.

Crop, rotate, or flip a photo or video

1. In Photos, tap a photo or video thumbnail to view it in full screen.

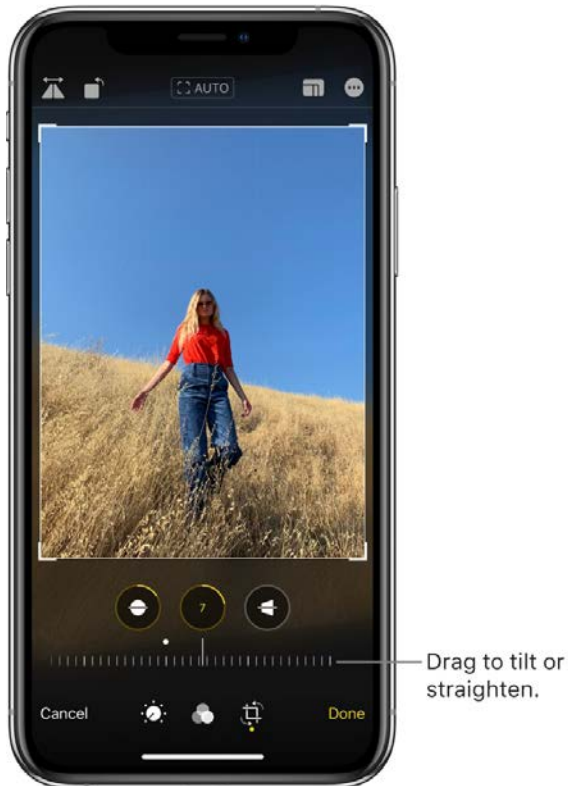
2. Tap Edit, tap , then do any of the following:
 - *Crop manually*: Drag the rectangle corners to enclose the area you want to keep in the photo, or you can pinch the photo open or closed.
 - *Crop to a standard preset ratio*: Tap , then choose a ratio like Square, 2:3, 8:10, and more.
 - *Rotate*: Tap  to rotate the photo 90 degrees.
 - *Flip*: Tap  to flip the image horizontally.
 3. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.
-

Straighten and adjust perspective

1. In Photos, tap a photo or video thumbnail to view it in full screen.
2. Tap Edit, then tap .
3. Select an effect button to straighten, adjust vertical perspective, or adjust horizontal perspective.


4. Drag the slider to adjust the effect.

The level of adjustment you make for each effect is displayed by the yellow outline around the button, so you can see at a glance which effects have been increased or decreased. Tap the button to toggle between the edited effect and the original.



5. Tap Done to save your edits.

Apply filter effects




1. In Photos, tap a photo or video thumbnail to view it in full screen.
2. Tap Edit, then tap  to apply filter effects such as Vivid, Dramatic, or Silvertone.
3. Tap a filter, then drag the slider to adjust the effect.
4. To compare the edited photo to the original, tap the photo.
5. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

Revert an edited photo

After you edit a photo and save your changes, you can revert to the original image.

1. Open the edited image, tap Edit, then tap Revert.
 2. Tap Revert to Original.
-

Mark up a photo

1. Tap a photo to view it in full screen.
2. Tap Edit, then tap .
3. Tap Markup .
4. Annotate the photo using the different drawing tools and colors. Tap  to add shapes, text, or even your signature.

See [Draw in apps with Markup on iPhone](#).

Trim a video

1. In Photos, open the video, then tap Edit.
2. Drag either end of the frame viewer, then tap Done.
3. Tap Save Video to save only the trimmed video, or Save Video as New Clip to save both versions of the video.



To undo the trim after you save, open the video, tap Edit, then tap Revert.


Note: A video saved as a new clip can't be reverted to the original.

Set the slow-motion section of a video shot in Slo-mo

1. Open a video shot in Slo-mo, then tap Edit.
2. Drag the white vertical bars beneath the frame viewer to set where the video is played in slow motion.

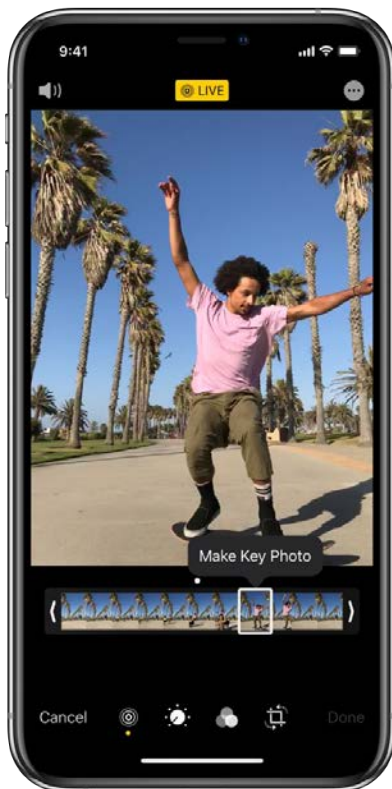
See [Record a slow-motion video](#).

Edit Live Photos on iPhone


In the Photos app , you can edit Live Photos, change the Key Photo, and add fun effects like Bounce and Loop.


Edit a Live Photo

In addition to using the photo editing tools (like adding filters or cropping a photo) you can also change the Key Photo, trim the length, or mute the sound in your Live Photos.



1. Open the Live Photo and tap Edit.

2. Tap , then do any of the following:

- *Set a key photo:* Move the white frame on the frame viewer, tap Make Key Photo, then tap Done.
- *Trim a Live Photo:* Drag either end of the frame viewer to choose the frames the Live Photo plays.
- *Make a still photo:* Tap the Live button at the top of the screen to turn off the Live feature. The Live Photo becomes a still of its key photo.
- *Mute a Live Photo:* Tap  at the top of the screen. Tap again to unmute.

See [Take a Live Photo](#).


Add effects to a Live Photo

You can add effects to Live Photos to turn them into fun videos.

1. Open the Live Photo.
2. Swipe up to see the effects, then choose one of the following:
 - *Loop:* Repeats the action in a continuous looping video.
 - *Bounce:* Rewinds the action backward and forward.
 - *Long Exposure:* Simulates a DSLR-like long exposure effect by blurring motion.

See [Take a Live Photo](#).

Edit Portrait mode photos on iPhone


In the Photos app , you can change and adjust the lighting effects of the photos you take in Portrait mode.

Edit Portrait Lighting effects in Portrait mode photos

On models that support Portrait Lighting, you can apply, change, or remove the Portrait Lighting effects in Portrait mode photos.

1. Tap any photo taken in Portrait mode to view it in full screen.



2. Tap Edit, touch  below the photo, then drag to choose a lighting effect.

- *Natural Light*: The face is in sharp focus against a blurred background.
- *Studio Light*: The face is brightly lit, and the photo has an overall clean look.
- *Contour Light*: The face has dramatic shadows with highlights and lowlights.
- *Stage Light*: The face is spotlighted against a deep black background.
- *Stage Light Mono*: The effect is like Stage Light, but the photo is in classic black and white.
- *High-Key Light Mono*: Creates a grayscale subject on a white background (on supported models).

Note: On iPhone XR, only the front camera supports Natural Light, Studio Light, and Contour Light.

3. Drag the slider left or right to adjust the intensity of the lighting effect.

4. Tap Done to save your changes.

To undo the Portrait Lighting effect after you save, tap Edit, then tap Revert to go back to the original lighting.


Note: To remove the Portrait effect from a photo, tap Portrait at the top of the screen.

See [Take Portrait mode photos](#).

Adjust Depth Control in Portrait mode photos


Use the Depth Control slider (on supported models) to adjust the level of background blur in your Portrait mode photos.

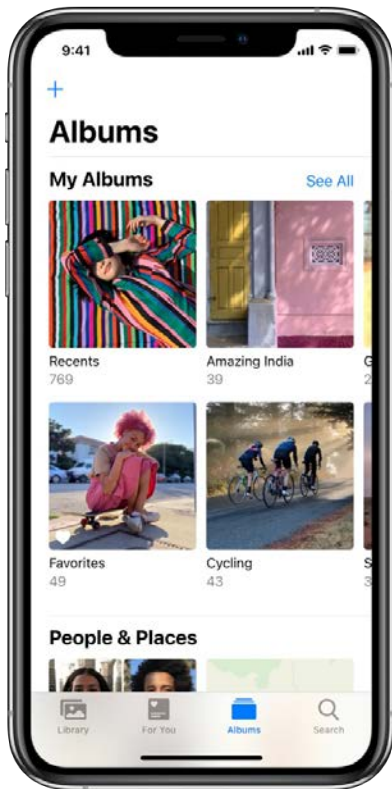


1. Tap any photo taken in Portrait mode to view it in full screen.
2. Tap Edit, then tap  at the top of the screen.
A slider appears below the photo.
3. Drag the slider left or right to adjust the background blur effect.
4. Tap Done to save your changes.

See [Take Portrait mode photos](#).

Organize photos in albums on iPhone

Use the Photos app  to organize your pictures with albums. Tap the Albums tab to see albums you created, Shared Albums you created or joined, and albums created automatically.



If you use iCloud Photos, albums are stored in iCloud. They're up to date and accessible on devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID. See [Use iCloud Photos on iPhone](#).

Create an album

Use albums to organize your photos.

1. In Photos, tap the Albums tab, then tap **+**.
2. Choose to create a New Album or New Shared Album.
3. Name the album, then tap Save.
4. Choose the photos you want to add, then tap Done.

To create a shared album, see [Share photos with Shared Albums in iCloud](#).

Add photos and videos to existing albums


1. Tap the Library tab at the bottom of the screen, then tap Select.
2. Tap the photo and video thumbnails that you want to add, then tap **+**.

3. Swipe up, then tap Add to Album from the list of actions.




4. Tap the album you want to add to.

Remove photos and videos from existing albums

1. In an album, tap a photo or video to view it in full screen.
2. Tap .
3. Remove the item from just the album or delete it from iCloud Photos on all your devices.

Rename, rearrange, and delete existing albums


1. Tap the Albums tab, then tap See All.
2. Tap Edit, then do any of the following:
 - *Rename*: Tap the album name, then enter a new name.
 - *Rearrange*: Touch and hold the album's thumbnail, then drag it to a new location.
 - *Delete*: Tap .

3. Tap Done.

Albums that Photos creates for you, such as Recents, People, and Places can't be deleted.


Sort photos in albums


You can sort photos and videos in an album by newest to oldest, or oldest to newest.

1. Tap the Albums tab, then select an album.
 2. Tap , then tap Sort.
-

Filter photos in albums



You can filter photos and videos in an album by favorites, edited, photos, and videos.

1. Tap the Albums tab, then select an album.
2. Tap , then tap Filter.
3. Choose how you want to filter the photos and videos in the album, then tap Done.


To remove a filter from an album, tap , tap All Items, then tap Done.

Organize albums in folders

You can create folders to contain multiple albums. For example, you could create a folder named "Vacations" and then create multiple albums within the folder of all your vacations. You can also create folders inside folders.

1. Tap the Albums tab, then tap .
 2. Choose New Folder.
 3. Name the folder, then tap Save.
 4. Open the folder, tap Edit, then tap  to create new albums or folders inside the folder.
-

Search for photos on iPhone

When you tap the Search tab in the Photos app , you see suggestions for people, places, and photo categories to help you find what you're looking for, or rediscover a moment you forgot about. You can also type a keyword into the search field—for example, a person's name, date, or location—to help you find a specific photo.

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Show me photos from January 2010." [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)



Tap the Search tab, then tap the search field at the top of the screen to search by the following:




- Date (month or year)
- Place (city or state)
- Business names (museums, for example)
- Category (beach or sunset, for example)
- Events (sports games or concerts, for example)
- Person (Lia or Gordon, for example)
- Caption (see [Add captions and view photo and video details](#))

Looking for something more specific? Refine your search with multiple keywords—simply keep adding keywords until you find the photo you want. Search also suggests keywords to add to your search.


Share photos and videos on iPhone

You can share photos and videos from the Photos app 🌈 in Mail or Messages, or other apps you install. Photos even selects your best photos from an event and recommends people you may want to share them with.

Share photos and videos

- *Share a single photo or video:* Open the photo or video, tap , then choose how you want to share it.
- *Share multiple photos or videos in All Photos or Days:* While viewing photos by All Photos or Days, tap Select, then tap the photos you want to share. Tap , then choose a share option. To share all of the photos from a day, tap , then tap Share Photos.

When [iCloud Photos](#) is turned on, multiple photos may be shared with an iCloud link. iCloud links remain available for 30 days, can be viewed by anyone, and can be shared using any app.

- *Share multiple photos or videos in Months:* While viewing events by Months, tap , then tap Share Photos to share all the photos from that event.

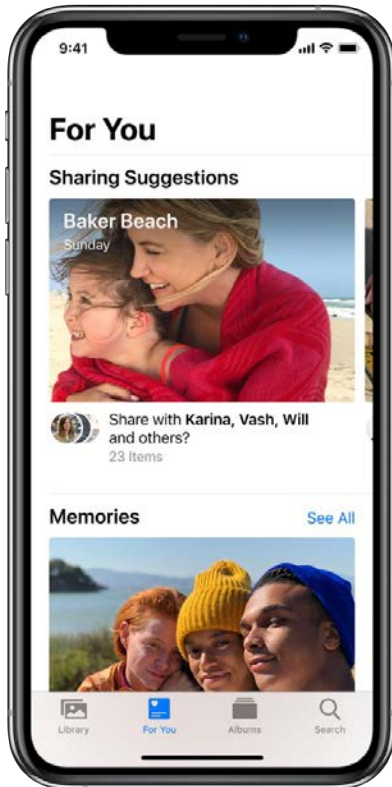


You can also use Shared Albums to share photos and videos with just the people you choose. See [Share iPhone photos with Shared Albums in iCloud](#).

Note: The size limit of attachments is determined by your service provider. For devices or services that don't support Live Photos, a Live Photo is shared as a still photo.



Share photos with Sharing Suggestions

Sharing Suggestions recommends a set of photos from an event that you may want to share and, based on the people in the photos, who you may want to share the photos with. After you share your photos, the recipients are prompted to share their photos from the event with you. Sharing Suggestions requires [iCloud Photos](#) turned on to share, but the photos you share can be viewed by anyone.





1. Tap the For You tab, then tap a photo collection in Sharing Suggestions.
2. Tap Select to add or remove photos, then tap Next.

Photos suggests sharing the photos you took with the people who were also at the event. You can choose who to share with, as well as add others.


3. Tap Share in Messages.
 - To send the link to more friends, or to stop sharing it, tap the collection, tap , then choose Copy iCloud Link or Stop Sharing.
 - To remove a photo collection from Sharing Suggestions, tap , then tap Remove Sharing Suggestion.

Need more help? See the Apple Support article [Use Sharing Suggestions in Photos](#).

Save or share a photo or video you receive

- *From email:* Tap to download the item if necessary, then tap . Or, touch and hold the item, then choose a sharing or saving option.
 - *From a text message:* Tap the photo or video in the conversation, tap , then choose a sharing or saving option.
-

View Memories in Photos on iPhone

The Photos app  scans your library to automatically create collections of photos and videos called *Memories*. Memories include photos and a movie, which is automatically edited for you and set to music. You can edit a Memory movie and share it with others. You can also make a Memory from an album you create.



Play a Memory movie

1. Tap the For You tab, then tap a Memory.



2. Tap the video at the top of the screen to play it.
3. To pause, tap the movie, then tap **||**.
4. To go forward or backward in the movie, tap the movie, then slide the frames at the bottom of the screen left or right.

To see a Memory movie from an event in Days or Months, tap **⋮** in the top-right corner of the event, then tap Play Memory Movie.

Edit a Memory movie

1. While a Memory movie is playing, tap the screen to show customization options.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Change the mood:* Swipe left or right through the moods to change the music and editing style.
 - *Change the length:* Swipe to change to short, medium, or long depending on the number of photos in the Memory.
 - *Personalize the movie:* Tap Edit at the top of the screen to add or delete specific photos, change the music, edit the title, and more.

3. Tap ▶.



Create a Memory


You can create your own Memory from an event or a specific day in your Library.

1. In the Library tab, tap Days or Months.
2. Tap ⋮, then tap Play Memory Movie.
3. While the movie plays, tap the screen, then tap Edit.
4. Tap OK, then make edits such as adding or deleting specific photos, changing the music, and editing the title.
5. Tap Done.

Delete a Memory


1. Tap the For You tab, then tap a Memory.
2. Tap ⋮, then tap Delete Memory or Suggest Fewer Memories Like This.

Share a Memory

1. Tap the For You tab, then play the Memory you want to share.
2. While the movie plays, tap the screen, tap , then choose how you want to share.

Add a Memory to Favorites


1. Tap the For You tab, then tap a Memory you want to mark as a favorite.

2. Tap , then tap Add to Favorite Memories.

To view your favorite Memories, tap See All, then tap Favorites.


Share photos from a Memory

Photos identifies the people in a Memory and makes it easy to share the photos in that Memory with them.

1. Tap the For You tab, then tap a Memory with photos you want to share.
2. Tap Select, then tap the photos you want to share.
3. Tap , then choose how you want to share them.

Photos suggests sharing the photos with the people in them. You can choose who to share with, as well as add others.

Find people in Photos on iPhone

The Photos app  scans your photo library for faces and adds the most frequently found faces to the People album. When you add names to the faces, you can search for photos by name.

Note: With iCloud Photos, your People album is kept up to date on all your devices that meet these minimum system requirements: iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or macOS 10.13. (You must be signed in with the same Apple ID on all the devices.)

Find photos of a specific person

To find photos of a specific person, do either of the following:

- In the Albums tab, tap the People album, then tap a person to see all of the photos they're in.
 - In the Search tab, enter a person's name in the search field.
-

Add a person to your People album


1. Open a photo of the person you want to add, then swipe up to see the photo details.
 2. Tap a face under People, then tap Add Name.
 3. Enter the person's name or select it from the list.
 4. Tap Next, then tap Done.
-

Name a person in your People album


1. Tap the Albums tab, then tap the People album.
2. Tap the face of the person whose name you want to add.
3. Tap Add Name at the top of the screen, then enter the person's name.
4. Tap Next, then tap Done.

If there's a face identified as two or more people in the People album, tap Select, tap each instance of the person, then tap Merge.


Set a person's key photo

1. Tap the People album, then tap a person.
 2. Tap Select, then tap Show Faces.
 3. Choose the photo you want to set as the key photo.
 4. Tap , then tap Make Key Photo.
-

Fix misidentifications

1. Tap the People album, then tap a person.
 2. Tap Select, then tap Show Faces.
 3. Tap the misidentified face.
 4. Tap , then tap Not This Person.
-

Browse photos by location on iPhone

The Photos app  creates collections of your photos and videos in the Places album based on where they were taken. View photos taken in a specific location, or look for photos taken nearby. See a collection of all your places on a map, or even watch a Memory movie of a certain place.

Browse photos by location

1. Tap the Albums tab, then tap the Places album.

2. Select Map or Grid view.

Only pictures and videos that have embedded location information (GPS data) are included.

 **Tip:** Zoom in and drag the map to see more specific locations.


See where a photo was taken

1. Open a photo, then swipe up to see the photo details.
 2. Tap the map or address link to see more details.
-

Look for photos taken nearby

1. Tap a photo to view it in full screen. (The photo must contain location information.)
 2. Swipe up, then tap Show Nearby Photos.
-

View a location-based Memory movie


1. In the Albums tab, tap the Places album, then tap Grid.
 2. Find a location with several images, then tap the location heading.
 3. Tap .
-

Use iCloud Photos on iPhone

iCloud Photos automatically uploads the photos and videos you take and stores them in their original format at full resolution. You can access your photos and videos in iCloud Photos from any device where you're signed in with your Apple ID.


To use iCloud Photos, you need a device that meets these minimum system requirements: iOS 8.1, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.10.3, or a PC with iCloud for Windows 7.

Turn on iCloud Photos

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Photos, then turn on iCloud Photos.

Save space on your iPhone

iCloud Photos keeps all your photos and videos in their original, high-resolution format. You can optimize storage to save space on your iPhone.

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Photos, then tap Optimize iPhone Storage.

View and share a full-resolution photo or video


1. Select a photo or video from your Library, then tap Edit.

The full-resolution photo or video downloads automatically.

2. Tap , then choose the device that you want to share it with.
-


Upgrade your iCloud storage to store more photos

If your uploaded photos and videos exceed your storage plan, you can upgrade your iCloud storage.

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Manage Storage > Change Storage Plan.

Need more help? See the Apple Support article [Set up and use iCloud Photos](#).


Share iPhone photos with Shared Albums in iCloud

With Shared Albums in the Photos app , you can share photos and videos with just the people you choose. They can also add their own photos, videos, and comments. Shared Albums works with or without iCloud Photos and My Photo Stream.


Turn on Shared Albums

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Photos, then turn on Shared Albums.

Create a new shared album

1. In the Albums tab, tap , then tap New Shared Album.
 2. Give the album a name, then tap Next.
 3. Choose people to invite, or type an email address or phone number, then tap Create.
-

Turn on public viewing in iCloud

1. In the Albums tab, select a shared album.
2. Tap , then turn on Public Website.

When Public Website is turned on, anyone with the iCloud URL can view the album.

Add photos and videos to a shared album

1. In the Albums tab, select a shared album, then tap **+**.
 2. Select all the items you want to add, then tap Done.
 3. Add a comment if you want, then tap Post.
-

Add or remove subscribers, or turn notifications on or off

Select the shared album, tap , then do any of the following:


- *Add subscribers:* Tap Invite People, then enter the names of the subscribers you want to add.

Subscribers can add photos and videos to the album. Turn off the Subscribers Can Post button so only you can add photos and videos.

- *Remove subscribers:* Tap the name of the subscriber, then tap Remove Subscriber.
 - *Turn notifications off:* Tap the Notifications button. Tap again to turn Notifications on.
-

Delete photos, videos, and comments from a shared album


You must be the owner of the shared album to delete photos or videos.

- *Delete photos and videos:* In a shared album, tap Select. Select the photos or videos you want to delete, then tap .
 - *Delete comments:* While viewing the comment in a shared photo, touch and hold, then tap Delete.
-

Rename a shared album


1. In Albums, scroll to Shared Albums, then tap See All.
 2. Tap Edit, then tap the name of the album and enter a new one.
-

Subscribe to a shared album

When you receive an invitation, tap , then tap Accept. You can also accept an invitation in an email.

Note: To use Shared Albums, your iPhone must be connected to the internet. Shared Albums work over both Wi-Fi and cellular networks. Cellular data charges may apply. See [Connect iPhone to the internet](#).

Use My Photo Stream on iPhone

Use My Photo Stream with the Photos app  to view recent photos on iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch. Automatically store up to 1000 images for 30 days without using iCloud storage space or iCloud Photos.

My Photo Stream automatically uploads your most recent photos to iCloud, so you can see them on devices that aren't using iCloud Photos. (My Photo Stream doesn't upload Live Photos or videos.) You must be signed in on all devices using the same Apple ID.

Turn on My Photo Stream

My Photo Stream doesn't count against your iCloud storage and only saves still photos. Your photos automatically upload when you leave the Camera app and are connected to Wi-Fi, but edits aren't updated across all devices.


Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Photos, then turn on Upload to My Photo Stream.

If you recently created your Apple ID, My Photo Stream might not be available. If My Photo Stream isn't available, use [iCloud Photos](#) to keep your photos and videos in iCloud.

Note: My Photo Stream is automatically turned off if you use iCloud Photos.



Save photos from My Photo Stream to your iPhone

Images in My Photo Stream remain in iCloud for 30 days—after that, they're removed. To keep these photos, you must save them from My Photo Stream to your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.

1. In the Albums tab, tap My Photo Stream.
 2. Tap Select, then select all photos you want to save.
 3. Tap , then tap Save Image.
-

Manage photos in My Photo Stream


Tap the My Photo Stream album, tap Select, then do any of the following:

- *Save your best shots to iCloud or your device:* Select the photos, then tap Add To.
- *Share, print, or copy:* Select the photos, then tap .
- *Delete photos:* Select the photos, then tap .

Although deleted photos are removed from My Photo Stream on all your devices, the original photos remain in Photos on the device on which they were taken. Photos that you save to another album on a device or computer also aren't deleted.

Photos in My Photo Stream don't count against your iCloud storage, and they're kept for 30 days in iCloud (up to 1000 photos). Download photos to your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or computer if you want to keep them permanently. See the Apple Support article [My Photo Stream](#).

Import photos and videos on iPhone



You can import photos and videos directly to the Photos app  from a digital camera, an SD memory card, or another iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch that has a camera. Use the Lightning to USB Camera Adapter or the Lightning to SD Card Camera Reader (both sold separately).

1. Insert the camera adapter or card reader into the Lightning connector on iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *Connect a camera:* Use the USB cable that came with the camera to connect the camera to the camera adapter. Turn on the camera, then make sure it's in transfer mode. For more information, see the documentation that came with the camera.
 - *Insert an SD memory card into the card reader:* Don't force the card into the slot on the reader; it fits only one way.
 - *Connect an iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch:* Use the USB cable that came with the device to connect it to the camera adapter. Turn on and unlock the device.
3. Open Photos on your iPhone, then tap Import.
4. Select the photos and videos you want to import, then select your import destination.
 - *Import all items:* Tap Import All.
 - *Import just some items:* Tap the items you want to import (a checkmark appears for each), tap Import, then tap Import Selected.
5. After the photos and videos have been imported, keep or delete them on the camera, card, iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.
6. Disconnect the camera adapter or card reader.

Need more help? See the Apple Support article [Import photos using Apple camera adapters](#).

Print photos on iPhone to an AirPrint-enabled printer


Print your photos directly from the Photos app  on your iPhone with any AirPrint-enabled device.

- *Print a single photo:* While viewing the photo, tap , then tap Print.
- *Print multiple photos:* While viewing photos, tap Select, select each photo you want to print, tap , then tap Print.

See [Print from iPhone](#).

Podcasts

Find podcasts on iPhone

Use the Podcasts app  to find and play free shows—similar to radio or TV shows—about science, news, politics, comedy, and more. If you subscribe to a show, iPhone automatically downloads new episodes as they're released.


 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: “Find Voyage To The Stars podcast.” [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

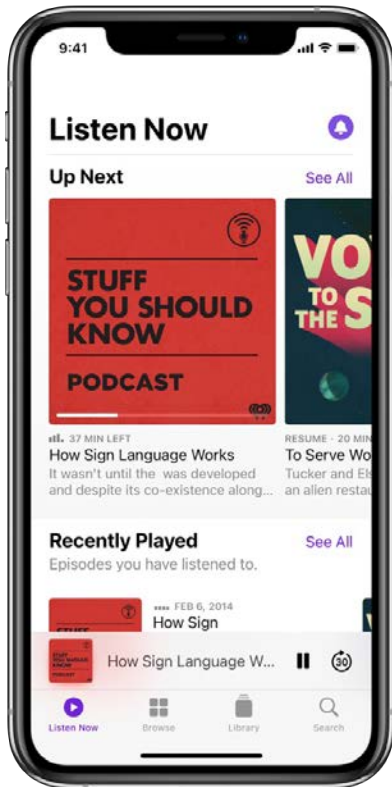
Find and subscribe to shows

- *Discover shows:* Tap Browse to see New & Noteworthy, Featured shows, or Top Shows and Episodes. You can also browse by categories or content providers.
 - *Search by title, person, or topic:* Tap Search, then enter what you're looking for.
 - *Subscribe to a show:* Tap the show to see its information page, then tap Subscribe.
-


Listen to your subscribed shows


Tap Listen Now, then select an episode from one of the following:

- *Up Next:* Pick up where you left off in a show, including resuming a previous episode.
- *Latest Episodes:* Find new episodes from shows you're already subscribed to.
- *Notifications:* To get notifications whenever a new episode is available, tap .



Play podcasts on iPhone

In the Podcasts app , you can play, pause, or skip ahead using the playback controls, set a sleep timer, and stream content to another device.








 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: “Play the newest episode of ‘The Daily’ podcast.” [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)


Play a podcast


1. Tap an episode.
2. For more playback controls, tap the player at the bottom to open the Now Playing screen.



Use any of the following controls:


Control	Description
	Play
	Pause
	Jump back 15 seconds
	Jump forward 30 seconds
	Choose a faster or slower playback speed
	Stream the audio to other devices
	Choose more actions such as sharing the episode or adding it to your queue.

 **Tip:** To jump to a specific time in the episode, drag the track position slider below the podcast artwork.

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Skip ahead 3 minutes." [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

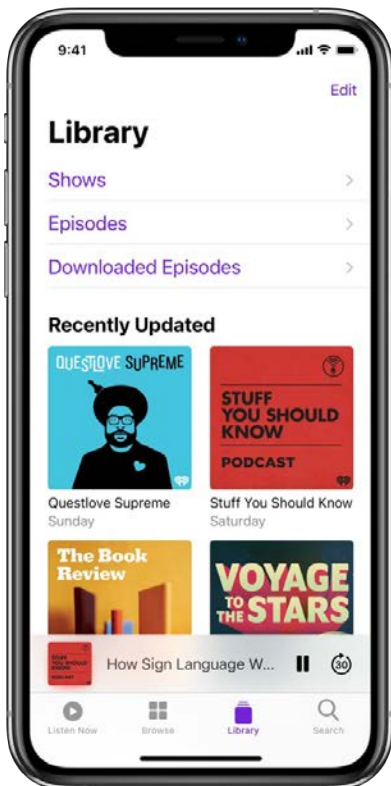
3. Swipe up on the Now Playing screen to see the sleep timer, episode notes, and your Up Next queue.


Manage your podcast subscriptions and library on iPhone

In the Podcasts app , you can add or remove subscriptions and episodes in your library.


Manage your subscriptions

1. Tap Library.




2. Tap a show to see its information page, tap , then do any of the following:
 - *Change the sequence of episode playback, disable notifications, and manage episode downloads:* Tap Settings.
 - *Stop downloading new episodes:* Tap Unsubscribe.
 - *Remove all the episodes:* Tap Delete from Library.

Manage episodes and downloads

- *Add an episode to your library:* For podcasts that you haven't subscribed to, tap **+** next to an episode. To download the episode so you can play it when you're offline, tap .
 - *Delete an episode:* Tap Library, tap Episodes, swipe left on the episode, then tap Delete.
 - *Remove a download:* Tap Library, tap Downloaded Episodes, swipe left on the episode, then tap Remove.
-


Change your Podcasts settings

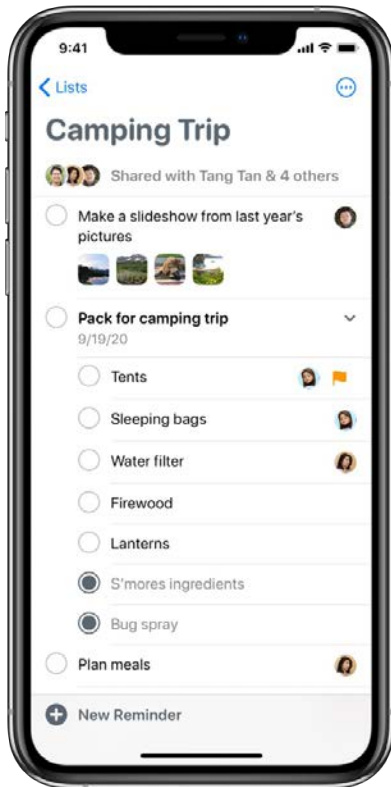
Go to Settings  > Podcasts, then do any of the following:

- *Prevent downloads from using cellular data:* Turn on Block Downloads Over Cellular.
 - *Keep your subscriptions up to date on all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID:* Turn on Sync Podcasts.
 - *Change the download settings for all your subscriptions:* Change the settings below Episode Downloads.
-


Reminders

Set reminders on iPhone

In the Reminders app , you can easily create and organize reminders to keep track of all of life's to-dos. Use it for shopping lists, projects at work, tasks around the house, and anything else you want to track. Create subtasks, set flags, add attachments, and choose when and where to receive reminders. You can also use smart lists to automatically organize your reminders.



Keep your reminders up to date on all your devices with iCloud

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud, then turn on Reminders.

Your iCloud reminders—and any changes you make to them—appear on your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, and Mac where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

Note: If you've been using Reminders on iOS 12 or earlier, you may need to upgrade your iCloud reminders to use features such as attachments, flags, subtasks, grouped lists, list colors and icons, and more. To upgrade, tap the Upgrade button next to your iCloud account in Reminders. (You may need to tap Lists at the top left to see your iCloud account.)

Upgraded reminders are not backward compatible with the Reminders app in earlier versions of iOS and macOS. See [Upgrading the Reminders app in iOS 13](#).



Add a reminder





 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Add artichokes to my groceries list." [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)


Or do the following:

1. Tap New Reminder, then enter text.

2. Use the quick toolbar above the keyboard to do any of the following:


- *Schedule a date and time:* Tap , then choose when you want to be reminded.
- *Add a location:* Tap , then choose where you want to be reminded—for example, when you arrive home or get into a car with a Bluetooth connection to your iPhone.

Note: To receive location-based reminders, you must allow Reminders to use your precise location. Go to Settings  > Privacy > Location Services, turn on Location Services, tap Reminders, choose While Using the App, then turn on Precise Location.
- *Assign the reminder:* (Available in shared lists) Tap , then choose a person on the shared list (including yourself).
- *Set a flag:* Tap  to mark an important reminder.
- *Attach a photo or scanned document:* Tap , then take a new photo, choose an existing photo from your photo library, or scan a document.

3. To add more details to the reminder, tap , then do any of the following:


- *Add notes:* In the Notes field, enter more info about the reminder.
- *Add a web link:* In the URL field, enter a web address. Reminders displays the link as a thumbnail that you can tap to go to the website.
- *Get a reminder when chatting with someone in Messages:* Turn on “When messaging,” then choose someone from your contacts list. The reminder appears the next time you chat with that person in Messages.
- *Set a priority:* Tap Priority, then choose an option.

4. Tap Done.


 **Tip:** With OS X 10.10 or later, you can [hand off reminders](#) you're editing between your Mac and iPhone.

Mark a reminder as complete

Tap the empty circle next to a reminder to mark it as complete and hide it.

To unhide completed reminders, tap , then tap Show Completed.

Edit multiple reminders all at once

1. Tap , tap Select Reminders, then select the reminders you want to edit.
2. Use the buttons at the bottom of the screen to complete, flag, add a date and time, move, assign, or delete the selected reminders.

Move or delete reminders


- *Reorder reminders in a list:* Touch and hold a reminder you want to move, then drag it to a new location.
- *Make a subtask:* Swipe right on the reminder, then tap Indent. Or drag a reminder onto another reminder.

If you delete or move a parent task, the subtasks are also deleted or moved. If you complete a parent task, the subtasks are also completed.


- *Move a reminder to a different list:* Tap the reminder, tap ⓘ, tap List, then choose a list.
- *Delete a reminder:* Swipe left on the reminder, then tap Delete.

To recover a deleted reminder, shake to undo or double-tap with three fingers.

Change your Reminders settings

1. Go to Settings  > Reminders.
 2. Choose options such as the following:
 - *Accounts:* Add an account such as iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, or Yahoo.
 - *Default List:* Choose the list for new reminders you create outside of a specific list, such as reminders you create using Siri.
 - *Today Notification:* Set a time to show notifications for all-day reminders that have been assigned a date without a time.
 - *Show as Overdue:* The scheduled date turns red for overdue all-day reminders.
 - *Mute Notifications:* Turn off notifications for assigned reminders.
-

Organize reminders in lists on iPhone

In the Reminders app , you can search your reminders and organize them in lists and groups.



Search reminders

In the search field above the reminder lists, enter what you're looking for.

Use smart lists

You can automatically track and organize upcoming reminders with smart lists. Below the search field, tap any of the following:

- *Today*: See reminders scheduled for today and overdue reminders.
- *Scheduled*: See reminders scheduled by date or time.
- *Flagged*: See reminders flagged as important.
- *Assigned to Me*: See reminders assigned to you.
- *Siri Suggestions*: See suggested reminders detected in Mail and Messages.
- *All*: See all your reminders across every list.


To show, hide, or rearrange the smart lists, tap Edit.

Create reminder lists and groups

You can organize your reminders into lists and groups of lists such as work, school, or shopping. Do any of the following:


- *Create and customize a new list:* Tap Add List, enter a name, then choose a color and symbol for the list.
 - *Create a group of lists:* Tap Edit, tap Add Group, enter a name, then tap Create. Or drag a list onto another list.
 - *Move and reorder lists:* Touch and hold a list, then drag it to a new location. You can even move it to a different group.
 - *Edit a list or group:* Swipe left on the list or group, then tap ⓘ. You can change the color and symbol of a list.
 - *Delete a list or group and their reminders:* Swipe left on the list or group, then tap 🗑️.
-

Share reminders and collaborate on iPhone

In the Reminders app , use iCloud to share reminder lists and collaborate with anyone who is also using iCloud.


Share a list using iCloud

You can share a list and collaborate with people who use iCloud. People who accept the invitation can add and edit reminders, and mark reminders as completed.

1. While viewing a list, tap , then tap Share List.
 2. Choose how to send your invitation (for example, using Mail or Messages).
-

Assign reminders in a shared list


You can assign a reminder to any person on the list, including yourself.

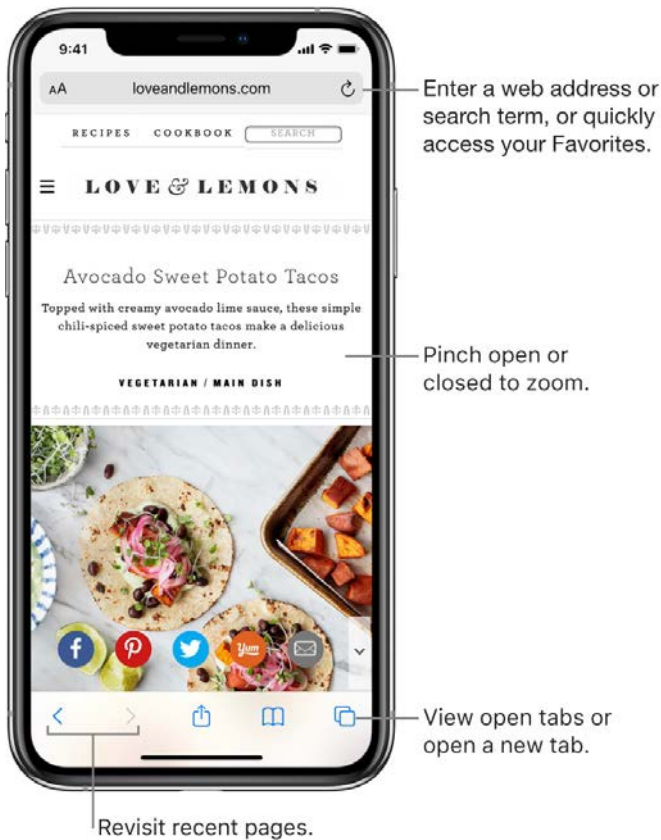
1. Tap the reminder you want to assign, then tap .
2. Choose a person on the shared list.

To quickly see all reminders assigned to you, tap the Assigned to Me smart list.

Safari


Browse the web using Safari on iPhone

With the Safari app , you can browse the web, add webpages to your reading list to read later, and add page icons to the Home Screen for quick access. If you sign in to iCloud with the same Apple ID on all your devices, you can see pages you have open on other devices, and keep your bookmarks, history, and reading list up to date on all your devices.



View websites with Safari

You can easily navigate a webpage with a few taps.

- *Get back to the top:* Double-tap the top edge of the screen to quickly return to the top of a long page.
- *See more of the page:* Turn iPhone to landscape orientation.
- *Refresh the page:* Tap  next to the address in the search field.

- *Share links:* Tap .
-

Change text size, display, and website settings

Use the View menu to increase or decrease the text size, switch to Reader view, specify privacy restrictions, and more.

To open the View menu, tap **AA** on the left side of the search field, then do any of the following:

- *Change the font size:* Tap the large A to increase the font size or tap the small A to decrease it.
 - *View the webpage without ads or navigation menus:* Tap Show Reader View (if available).
 - *Hide the search field:* Tap Hide Toolbar (tap the top of the screen to get it back).
 - *View the desktop version of the webpage:* Tap Request Desktop Website (if available).
 - *Set display and privacy controls for each time you visit this website:* Tap Website Settings.
-

Preview website links

Touch and hold a link in Safari to see a preview of the link without opening the page. To open the link, tap the preview, or choose another option.


To close the preview and stay on the current page, tap anywhere outside the preview.




Touch and hold a link to see the URL and these options.

Translate a webpage

(Beta) When you encounter a webpage that's in another language, you can use Safari to translate the text.

When viewing a webpage in another language, tap **AA**, then tap .

Search for websites using Safari on iPhone


In the Safari app , enter a URL or a search term to find websites or specific information.

Search the web

1. Enter a search term, phrase, or URL in the search field at the top of the page.

2. Tap a search suggestion, or tap Go on the keyboard to search for exactly what you typed.



If you don't want to see suggested search terms, go to Settings  > Safari, then turn off Search Engine Suggestions (below Search).

Find websites you visited before

Safari search suggestions include your open tabs, bookmarks, and pages you recently visited. For example, if you search for "iPad," the search suggestions below Switch to Tab include your open tabs related to "iPad." Websites related to "iPad" that you bookmarked or recently visited appear below Bookmarks and History.

Search within websites

To search within a website, enter a website followed by a search term in the search field. For example, enter "wiki einstein" to search Wikipedia for "einstein."


To turn this feature on or off, go to Settings  > Safari > Quick Website Search.


See your favorites when you enter an address, search, or create a new tab

Go to Settings  > Safari > Favorites, then select the folder with the favorites you want to see.

Search the page

You can find a specific word or phrase on a page.


1. Tap , then tap Find on Page.
2. Enter the word or phrase in the search field.

3. Tap  to find other instances.

Choose a search engine


Go to Settings  > Safari > Search Engine.

Use tabs in Safari on iPhone


In the Safari app , use tabs to help you navigate between multiple open webpages.


Open a link in a new tab

Touch and hold the link, then tap Open in New Tab. Or, tap the link with two fingers.

To stay on the current tab whenever you open a link in a new tab, go to Settings  > Safari > Open Links, then tap In Background.



Browse open tabs

Tap  to view all your open tabs. Then do any of the following:

- *Close a tab:* Tap  in the upper-left corner, or swipe left on the tab.
- *View a single tab again:* Tap a tab, or tap Done.

 **Tip:** To see a tab's history, touch and hold  or .

Reopen a recently closed tab


Tap , touch and hold , then choose from the list of recently closed tabs.

Show or hide the tab bar


Go to Settings  > Safari, then turn Show Tab Bar on or off.

View tabs that are open on your other devices

1. Sign in with your Apple ID on all your devices.

2. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud, then turn on Safari.

Note: To also see tabs open on your Mac, you must have Safari selected in iCloud preferences on your Mac and be signed in with the same Apple ID.


3. Tap , then scroll to the list at the bottom.

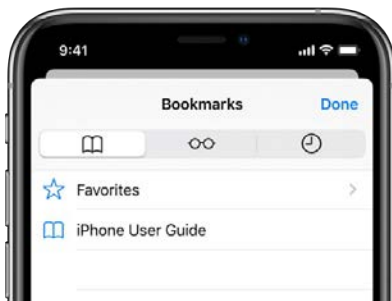


Scroll to the bottom to see tabs open on other devices.


To close a tab in the list, swipe left, then tap Close.

Bookmark favorite webpages in Safari on iPhone


In the Safari app , bookmark websites and add them to Favorites to easily revisit later.



Bookmark the current page

Touch and hold , then tap Add Bookmark.

View and organize your bookmarks

Tap , then tap the Bookmarks tab.


To create a new folder or to delete, rename, or reorder bookmarks, tap Edit.


See your Mac bookmarks on iPhone

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud, then turn on Safari.

Note: You must also have Safari selected in iCloud preferences on your Mac and be signed in with the same Apple ID.


Add a webpage to your favorites

Open the page, tap , then tap Add to Favorites.

To edit your favorites, tap , tap the Bookmarks tab, tap Favorites, then tap Edit to delete, rename, or rearrange your favorites.

Quickly see your favorite and frequently visited sites

Tap the search field to see your favorites. Scroll down to see frequently visited sites.

Note: To avoid seeing a list of these sites, go to Settings  > Safari, then turn off Frequently Visited Sites.


Add a website icon to your iPhone Home Screen

You can add a website icon to your iPhone Home Screen for quick access to that site.

From the website, tap , then tap Add to Home Screen.


The icon appears only on the device where you add it.

Save pages to a reading list in Safari on iPhone



In the Safari app , save interesting items in your reading list so you can revisit them later. You can even save the items in your reading list to iCloud and read them later when you're not connected to the internet.

Add the current page to your reading list

Tap , then tap Add to Reading List.

 **Tip:** To add a linked page without opening it, touch and hold the link, then tap Add to Reading List.

View your reading list


Tap , then tap .

To delete an item from your reading list, swipe the item to the left.



Automatically save all reading list items to iCloud for offline reading

Go to Settings  > Safari, then turn on Automatically Save Offline (below Reading List).

Automatically fill in forms in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app , use AutoFill to automatically fill in credit card information, contact information, and user names and passwords.

Fill in a form


1. Tap a field to bring up the keyboard.
 2. Tap  or  above the keyboard to move from field to field.
-

Fill in your contact information automatically

When you fill in contact information on a website that supports AutoFill, tap AutoFill Contact above the keyboard.

Tap Customize to edit and store your information for next time. Or, tap Other Contact to fill in someone else's information.

Add a credit card for purchases

1. Go to Settings  > Safari > AutoFill > Saved Credit Cards > Add Credit Card.
2. To enter the information without typing, tap Use Camera, then position iPhone so that your card appears in the frame.

You can also save the credit card information when you make an online purchase. See [Make your passwords available on all your devices with iPhone and iCloud Keychain](#).

Use your credit card information

1. When you fill in credit card information, tap AutoFill Credit Card above the keyboard.
2. Enter your card's security code (for security purposes, this code isn't stored—you must enter it manually each time you use a card).


For greater security of your credit card information, [use a passcode](#) for iPhone.

Submit a form


Tap Go, Search, or the link on the webpage.

Turn off AutoFill

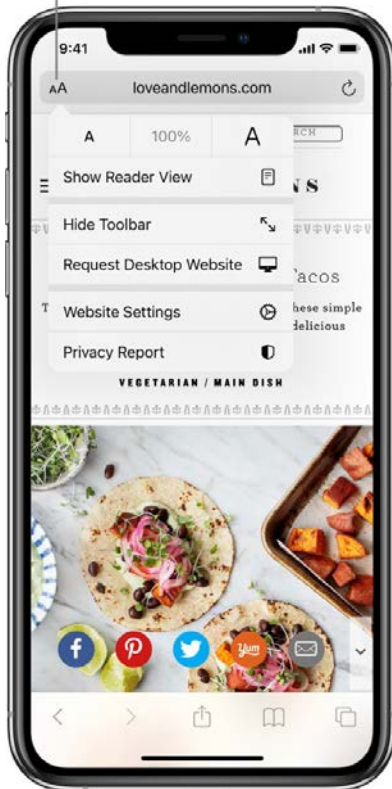
You can turn off AutoFill for your contact or credit card information, and for passwords.

- *Turn off AutoFill for your contact or credit card information:* Go to Settings  > Safari > AutoFill, then turn off either option.
 - *Turn off AutoFill for passwords:* Go to Settings > Passwords, then turn off AutoFill Passwords.
-

Hide ads and distractions in Safari on iPhone

In the Safari app , use Reader view to hide ads, navigation menus, or other distracting items.

Tap to view the page in Reader.



Show Reader view

Reader view formats a webpage to show just the relevant text and images.

Tap **AA** at the left end of the address field, then tap Show Reader View.


To return to the full page, tap **AA**, then tap Hide Reader View.

Note: If **AA** is dimmed, Reader view isn't available for that page.


Automatically use Reader view for a website

1. On a supported website, tap **AA**, then tap Website Settings.
2. Turn on Use Reader Automatically.

Block pop-ups


Go to Settings  > Safari, then turn on Block Pop-ups.

Browse privately in Safari on iPhone


You can view the Privacy Report and adjust settings in the Safari app  to keep your browsing activities private and protect yourself from malicious websites.

View the Privacy Report

Safari prevents trackers from following you across websites. The Privacy Report provides an overview of privacy tracking objects that have been encountered while browsing the current webpage.

To view the Privacy Report, tap **AA** on the left side of the search field, then tap Privacy Report .

Control privacy and security settings for Safari

Go to Settings  > Safari, then below Privacy & Security, turn any of the following on or off:


- *Prevent Cross-Site Tracking*: Safari limits third-party cookies and data by default. Turn this option off to allow cross-site tracking.
- *Block All Cookies*: Turn this option on to prevent websites from adding cookies to your iPhone. (To remove cookies already on iPhone, go to Settings > Safari > Clear History and Website Data.)
- *Fraudulent Website Warning*: Safari displays a warning if you're visiting a suspected phishing website. Turn this option off if you don't want to be warned of fraudulent websites.
- *Check for Apple Pay*: Websites that use Apple Pay can check to see if you have Apple Pay enabled on your device. Turn this option off to prevent websites from checking if you have Apple Pay.

When you visit a website using Safari that isn't secure, a warning appears in the Safari search field.


Erase your browsing history and data

Go to Settings  > Safari > Clear History and Website Data.


Visit sites without making history

Tap , then tap Private.

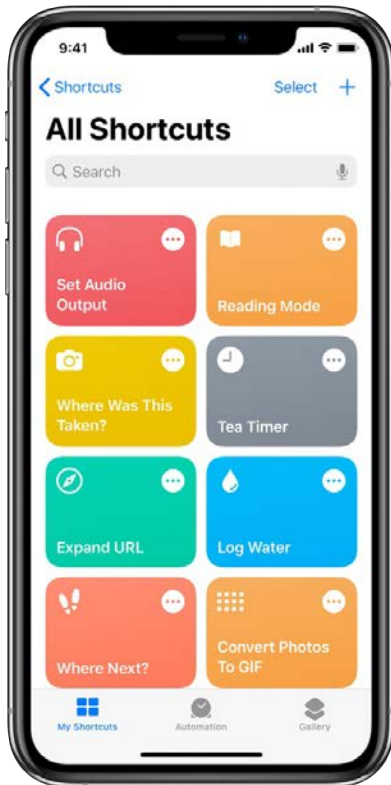
While Private Browsing Mode is on, the Safari background is black instead of white, and sites you visit don't appear in History on iPhone or in the list of tabs on your other devices.

To hide the sites and exit Private Browsing Mode, tap , then tap Private again. The sites reappear the next time you use Private Browsing Mode.


Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPhone


The Shortcuts app  lets you automate tasks you do often with just a tap or by asking Siri. Create shortcuts to get directions to the next event in your Calendar, move text from one app to another, and more. Choose ready-made shortcuts from the Gallery or build your own using different apps to run multiple steps in a task.

To learn more, see the [Shortcuts User Guide](#).



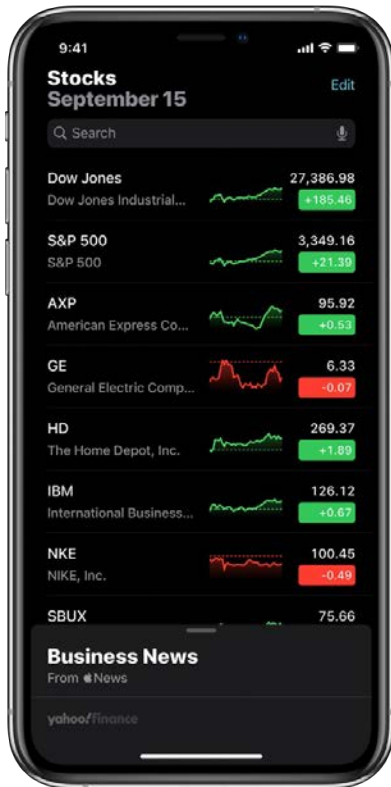
Check stocks on iPhone

Use the Stocks app  to track market activity, view the performance of stocks you follow, and get the latest business news.

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: “How are the markets doing?” or “How’s Apple stock today?” [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

Manage your watchlist

Add the stocks you follow to your watchlist to quickly view price, price change, percentage change, and market capitalization values.




- **Add a symbol to your watchlist:** In the search field, enter a stock symbol, company name, fund name, or index. Tap the symbol you want to add in the search results, then tap Add to Watchlist.
- **Delete a symbol:** Swipe left on the symbol in your watchlist, then tap Remove.
- **Reorder symbols:** Tap Edit at the top of the screen. Touch and hold \equiv to drag a symbol up or down, then tap Done.

View stock charts, details, and news

Tap a stock symbol in your watchlist to view an interactive chart, additional details, and related news stories.




- *See the performance of a stock over time:* Tap an option from the time range selections at the top of the chart.
- *See the value for a specific date or time:* Touch and hold the chart with one finger.
- *See the difference in value over time:* Touch and hold the chart with two fingers.
- *See more details:* Swipe the data below the chart to see additional stock details like 52-week high and low, Beta, EPS, and average trading volume.
- *Read news:* Swipe up to see additional news stories, then tap a story.

To return to your watchlist, tap .

View your watchlist across devices

You can view your watchlist across your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Mac when you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

On your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch, go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud, then turn on Stocks.

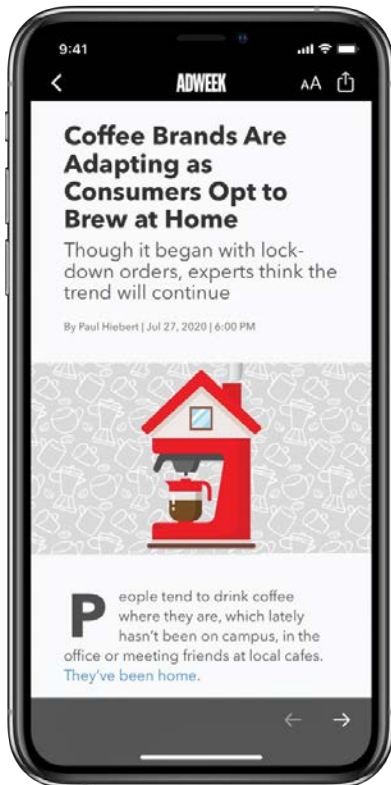
On your Mac, choose Apple menu  > System Preferences, then do one of the following:

- *macOS 10.15 or later:* Click Apple ID, select iCloud, then turn on Stocks.

- *macOS 10.14 or earlier:* Select iCloud, then turn on Stocks.
-

Read business news

Swipe up on Business News or Top Stories to view stories selected by Apple News editors that highlight the current news driving the market. You also see stories about companies in your watchlist grouped by ticker symbol, including Apple News+ content for subscribers (Apple News and Apple News+ are not available in all countries or regions).




Stories from publications you have blocked in Apple News don't appear in the news feed. See [View news stories chosen just for you](#).

Add a Stocks widget to your iPhone Home Screen

Use a Stocks widget to check stocks at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen. Choose Watchlist to monitor several symbols from your watchlist on your Home Screen, or Symbol to monitor the performance of a single symbol.

See [Add widgets to the iPhone Home Screen](#).

Get tips on iPhone

In the Tips app , see collections of tips that help you get the most from iPhone.




Get Tips


In the Tips app, tap a collection to learn how to take better photos, use dictation, create a custom radio station, and much more.

New tips are added frequently.

Get notified when new tips arrive





1. Go to Settings , then tap Notifications.
2. Tap Tips below Notification Style, then turn on Allow Notifications.
3. Choose options for the location and style of tip notifications, when they should appear, and so on.

Translate voice and text on iPhone

In the Translate app , you can translate voice and text between any of the supported languages. You can even translate conversations and download specific languages to translate fully offline.



Translate text or your voice


1. In the Translate tab, rotate iPhone to portrait orientation, then tap Translate.
2. At the top of the screen, select the languages to translate between.
3. Tap Enter text, type a phrase, then tap Go. Or tap , then say a phrase.
4. When the translation is shown, do any of the following:
 - *Replay the translation audio:* Tap .
 - *Save the translation to the Favorites tab:* Tap .
 - *Look up a word in the dictionary:* Tap , then tap a word to see its definition.

You can also view your recent history and save phrases you just translated in the Favorites tab.


Translate a conversation

In conversation mode, iPhone splits the screen to show the transcribed and translated text from both sides of the conversation, followed by the translated audio. Conversation mode works for downloaded languages even when you don't have an internet connection.



1. In the Translate tab, rotate iPhone to landscape orientation.
2. Tap , then speak in one of the two languages.

Get someone's attention with large text

In the Translate tab, rotate iPhone to landscape orientation, then tap .




Download languages to iPhone for offline translation

1. Tap the Translate tab, then tap a language at the top of the screen.
2. Scroll down to Available Offline Languages, tap the languages you want to download, then tap Done.

TV

Set up the Apple TV app on iPhone

With the Apple TV app , you can watch Apple TV+ originals as well as your other favorite shows, movies, sports, and live news. Subscribe to Apple TV channels such as CBS All Access and Showtime, watch titles from streaming services and cable providers, and purchase or rent movies and TV shows. The Apple TV app is on your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices, so you can watch at home or wherever you go.

Note: The availability of the Apple TV app and its features and services (such as Apple TV+, Apple TV channels, sports, news, and supported apps) varies by country or region. See the Apple Support articles [Availability of Apple Media Services](#) and [Availability of supported apps in the Apple TV app](#).

Subscribe to Apple TV+

You can subscribe to Apple TV+ (not available in all countries or regions) and watch new, exclusive Apple Originals without ads. Stream Apple TV+ on demand on iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices, or download Apple Originals to watch offline on iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Mac. If you use Family Sharing, up to five other family members can [share the subscription](#) for no additional charge.

1. Tap Watch Now, scroll down to the Apple TV+ row, then do one of the following:
 - *Start a free trial:* Tap the button to start your free trial (available for eligible Apple ID accounts). Apple TV+ provides one free trial per subscriber or family.
 - *Start a monthly subscription:* Tap Subscribe.
 2. Review the subscription details, then confirm with Face ID, Touch ID, or your Apple ID.
-

Subscribe to Apple TV channels


If you subscribe to Apple TV channels (such as CBS All Access and Showtime), you can stream the ad-free content on demand or download it to watch offline. If you use Family Sharing, up to five other family members can [share the subscription](#) for no additional charge.

1. Tap Watch Now, then scroll down to browse the available channels.
2. To watch a channel, do one of the following:
 - *Start a free trial:* Tap the button to start your free trial (available for eligible Apple ID accounts). Each Apple TV channel provides one free trial per subscriber or family. The length of the trial may vary.
 - *Start a monthly subscription:* Tap Subscribe.

3. Review the subscription details, then confirm with Face ID, Touch ID, or your Apple ID.

Add your cable or satellite service to the Apple TV app

Single sign-on provides immediate access to all the supported video apps in your subscription package.


1. Go to Settings  > TV Provider.
2. Choose your TV provider, then sign in with your provider credentials.

If your TV provider isn't listed, sign in directly from the app you want to use.

Connect supported apps to the Apple TV app

The Apple TV app recommends new content or the next episode in a series you watched. The first time you play from a supported app, tap Connect to allow the connection to the Apple TV app.

Manage your connected apps and subscriptions


1. Tap Watch Now, then tap  or your profile picture at the top right.
2. Tap any of the following:

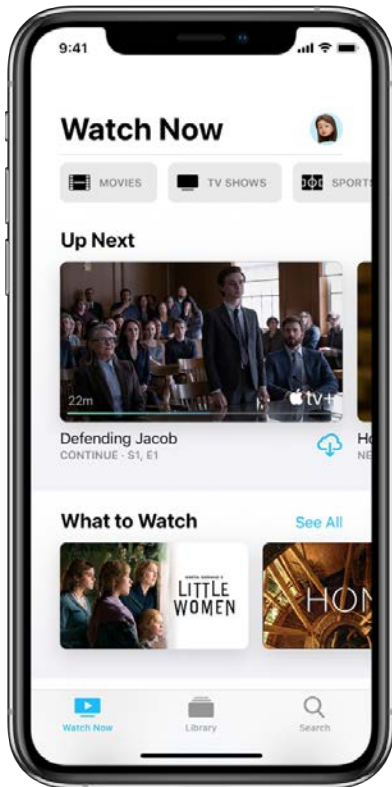
- *Connected Apps*: Turn apps on or off.

Connected apps appear in the Apple TV app on all your devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

- *Manage Subscriptions*: Tap a subscription to change or cancel it.
 - *Clear Play History*: Remove your viewing history from all your Apple devices.
-

Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPhone

The Apple TV app  brings your favorite shows, movies, sports, and live news together in one place. Quickly find and watch your favorites, pick up where you left off with Up Next, or discover something new—personalized just for you.



[Watch *Defending Jacob* on the Apple TV app](#) ↗

Discover shows and movies

In the Apple TV app, tap Watch Now, then do any of the following:

- **See *what's up next*:** In the Up Next row, find titles you recently added, rented, or purchased, catch the next episode in a series you've been watching, or resume what you're watching from the moment you left off.
- **Browse by category:** Tap a category such as Movies, TV Shows, Sports, or Kids.
- **Get recommendations:** Browse the What to Watch row for editorial recommendations that are personalized for you. Many rows throughout the app feature personalized recommendations based on your channel subscriptions, supported apps, purchases, and viewing interests.
- **Browse Apple TV+:** In the Apple TV+ row, tap a title to see more information or play a trailer.
- **Browse Apple TV channels:** Scroll down to browse channels you subscribe to. In the Apple TV channels row, browse other available channels, then tap a channel to explore its titles.
- **Watch live news:** (available in select countries or regions) Tap TV shows at the top, scroll down to the News row, then choose a news channel.

Search for a title, sport, team, cast member, or Apple TV channel

Tap Search, then enter what you're looking for in the search field.

Explore sports (U.S. and Canada only)

You can browse by sport or league, watch games, and get live scores and notifications for close games.

1. Tap Watch Now, then tap Sports at the top.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Browse by sport:* Scroll down to browse the events of many sports, such as football, baseball, and basketball. To narrow your browsing, scroll down, then choose a sport.
 - *Watch a game:* Tap the game.
 - *Choose your favorite teams:* Scroll to the bottom, then tap Your Favorite Teams.

Their games automatically appear in Up Next, and you'll receive notifications about your favorite teams.

To hide the scores of live games, go to Settings  > TV, then turn off Show Sports Scores.

Use the Up Next queue

- *Add an item to Up Next:* Tap the item to see its details, then tap Add.
 - *Remove an item from Up Next:* Touch and hold the item, then tap Remove from Up Next.
 - *Continue watching on another device:* You can see your Up Next queue in Watch Now on your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple TV, or supported smart TV where you're signed in with your Apple ID.
-

Watch shows and movies in the Apple TV app on iPhone

Play shows and movies from the Apple TV app  on iPhone. Purchases, rentals, Apple TV+, and Apple TV channels play in the Apple TV app, while content from other providers plays in their video app.


Buy, rent, stream, or download shows and movies

1. Tap an item to see its details.

2. Choose any of the following options (not all options are available for all titles):

- *Watch Apple TV+ or Apple TV channels:* Tap Play. If you're not a current subscriber, tap Try It Free (available for eligible Apple ID accounts) or Subscribe.
- *Choose a different video app:* If the title is available from multiple apps, scroll down to How To Watch, then choose an app.
- *Buy or rent:* Confirm your selection, then complete the payment.

When you rent a movie, you have 30 days to start watching it. After you start watching the movie, you can play it as many times as you want for 48 hours, after which the rental period ends. When the rental period ends, the movie is deleted.

- *Download:* Tap . You can find the download in Library and watch it even when iPhone isn't connected to the internet.
- *Pre-order:* Review the details, then tap Pre-Order.

When the pre-ordered item becomes available, your payment method is billed, and you receive an email notification. If you turned on automatic downloads, the item is automatically downloaded to your iPhone.

Note: The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Control playback in the Apple TV app

During playback, tap the screen to show the controls.











[The LEGO Movie 2: The Second Part is available on the Apple TV app](#)

Control	Description
---------	-------------



Play

Control	Description
	Pause
	Skip backward 15 seconds; touch and hold to rewind
	Skip forward 15 seconds; touch and hold to fast-forward
	Change the aspect ratio; if you don't see the scaling control, the video already fits the screen perfectly
	Display subtitles and closed captions (if available)
	Stream the video to other devices
	Multitask with Picture in Picture; you can continue to watch the video while you use another app
	Stop playback

Change the Apple TV app settings

1. Go to Settings  > TV.

2. Choose streaming options:

- *Use Cellular Data*: Turn off to limit streaming to Wi-Fi connections.
- *Cellular*: Choose High Quality or Automatic.
- *Wi-Fi*: Choose High Quality or Data Saver.

High Quality requires a faster internet connection and uses more data.

3. Choose download options:

- *Use Cellular Data*: Turn off to limit downloads to Wi-Fi connections.
- *Cellular*: Choose High Quality or Fast Downloads.
- *Wi-Fi*: Choose High Quality or Fast Downloads.

High Quality results in slower downloads and uses more data.

- *Languages*: Choose a language. Each added audio language increases the download size. To remove a language, swipe left on the language you want to remove, then tap Delete.

The default language is the primary language for your country or region. If you turned on Audio Descriptions in Settings > Accessibility, audio descriptions are also downloaded.

4. To update your recommendations and Up Next queue based on what you watch on your iPhone, turn on Use Play History.

What you watch on your iPhone affects your personalized recommendations and Up Next on all your devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

Remove a download


1. Tap Library, then tap Downloaded.
2. Swipe left on the item you want to remove, then tap Delete.

Removing an item from iPhone doesn't delete it from your purchases in iCloud. You can download the item to iPhone again later.

The LEGO Movie 2: The Second Part © 2019 Warner Bros. Entertainment Inc. LEGO, the LEGO logo, the minifigure, and the brick and knob configuration are trademarks of The LEGO Group. © 2019 The LEGO Group. All rights reserved.

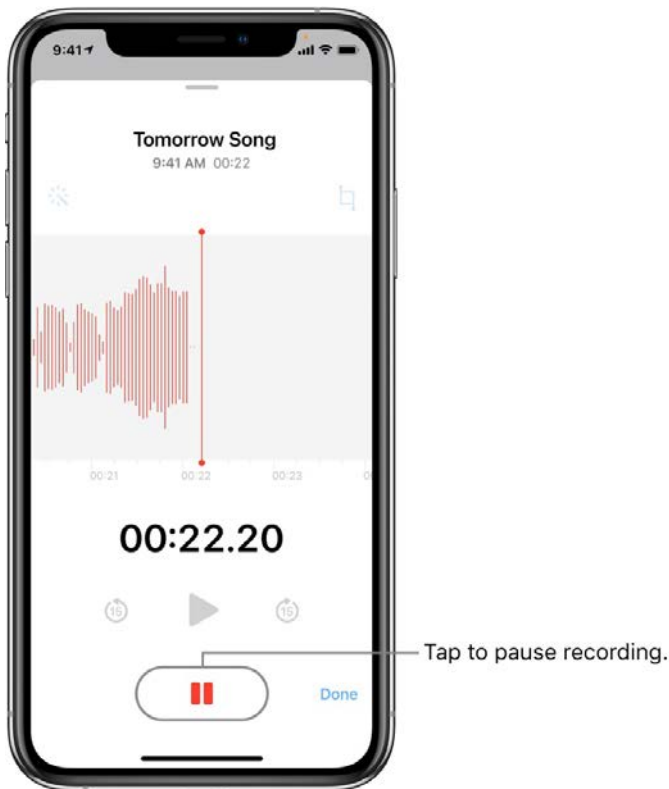
Voice Memos

Make a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

With the Voice Memos app  (located in the Utilities folder), you can use iPhone as a portable recording device to record personal notes, classroom lectures, musical ideas, and more. You can fine-tune your recordings with editing tools like trim, replace, and resume.

Record voice memos using the built-in microphone, a supported headset, or an external microphone.

When Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or preferences, your recordings [appear and update automatically](#) on all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.




Make a basic recording

1. To begin recording, tap .

To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther from what you're recording.

2. Tap  to finish recording.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if [Turn on Location Services](#) is turned on in Settings  > Privacy. To change the name, tap the recording, then tap the name and type a new one.

To fine-tune your recording, see [Edit a recording in Voice Memos](#).

Note: For your privacy, when you use Voice Memos to make recordings, an orange dot appears at the top of your screen to indicate your microphone is in use.


Use the advanced recording features


You can make a recording in parts, pausing and resuming as you record.


1. To begin recording, tap .

To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther away from what you're recording.


To see more details while you're recording, swipe up from the top of the waveform.

2. Tap  to stop recording; tap Resume to continue.

3. To review your recording, tap .

To change where playback begins, drag the waveform left or right across the playhead before you tap .

4. To save the recording, tap Done.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if [Turn on Location Services](#) is turned on in Settings  > Privacy. To change the name, tap the recording, then tap the name and type a new one.

To fine-tune your recording, see [Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos](#).

Mute the start and stop tones

While recording, use the iPhone volume down button to turn the volume all the way down.

Use another app while recording


While you're recording, you can use another app, as long as it doesn't play audio on your device. If the app starts playing audio, Voice Memos stops recording.

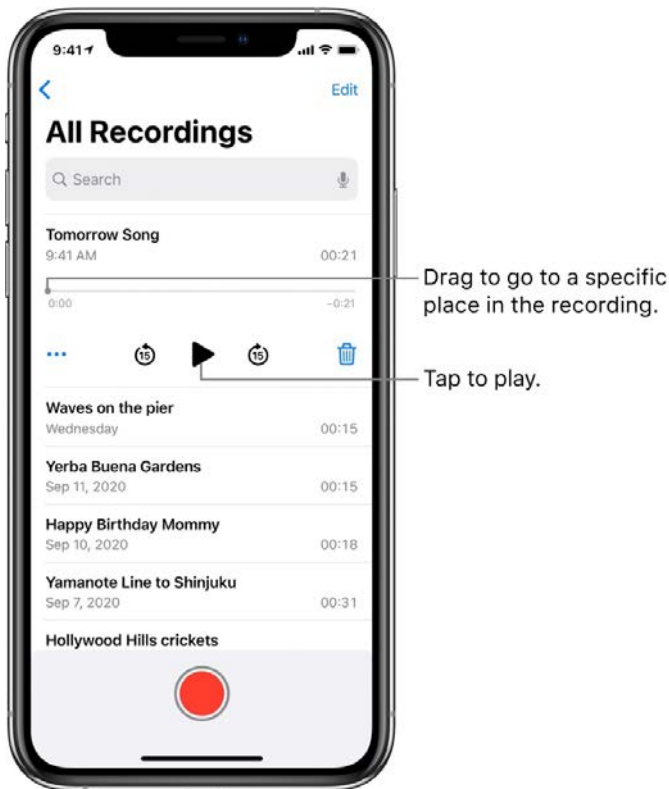
1. While recording in Voice Memos, you can go to the Home Screen and open another app.
 2. To return to Voice Memos, tap the red bar or the little red icon at the top of the screen.
-





If Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or preferences, your recording is saved in iCloud and appears automatically on all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.


Recordings using the built-in microphone are mono, but you can record stereo using an external stereo microphone that works with iPhone. Look for accessories marked with the Apple "Made for iPhone" or "Works with iPhone" logo.

Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone


In the Voice Memos app , tap a recording and use the playback controls to listen to it.




Control	Description
	Play
	Pause
	Skip backward 15 seconds
	Skip forward 15 seconds


 **Tip:** While the recording is open, you can tap its name to rename it.

Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

In the Voice Memos app , you can use the editing tools to fine-tune your recordings. You can remove parts you don't want, record over parts, or replace an entire recording. You can also delete a recording you no longer need.

Trim the excess


1. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to edit, tap , then tap Edit Recording.

2. Tap  at the top right, then drag the yellow trim handles to enclose the section you want to keep or delete.

You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise editing.





Drag the yellow trim handles on the waveform to select a section of the recording.

To check your selection, tap .


3. To keep the selection (and delete the rest of the recording), tap Trim, or to delete the selection, tap Delete.
4. Tap Save, then tap Done.

Enhance a recording

You can enhance a recording to reduce background noise and echo.

1. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to enhance, tap , then tap Edit Recording.
2. Tap , then tap Done.

Replace a recording


1. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to replace, tap , then tap Edit Recording.

2. Drag the waveform to position the playhead where you want to start recording new audio.

You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise placement.

3. Tap Replace to begin recording (the waveform turns red as you record).


Tap  to pause; tap Resume to continue.


4. To check your recording, tap .

5. Tap Done to save the changes.

Delete a recording

Do one of the following:

- In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to delete, then tap .
- Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, then tap Delete.

Deleted recordings move to the Recently Deleted folder, where they're kept for 30 days by default. To change how long deleted recordings are kept, go to Settings  > Voice Memos > Clear Deleted, then select an option.


Recover or erase a deleted recording


1. Tap the Recently Deleted folder, then tap the recording you want to recover or erase.

2. Do any of the following:


- *Recover the selected recording:* Tap Recover.
 - *Recover everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Recover All.
 - *Delete everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Delete All.
-

Keep recordings up to date in Voice Memos on iPhone

With the Voice Memos app  and iCloud, your audio recordings appear and are kept up to date automatically on all your devices (where you're signed in with the same Apple ID and Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or preferences).

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud, then turn on Voice Memos.



Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPhone

In the Voice Memos app , you can mark recordings as favorites and organize your recordings into folders.

Note: Apple Watch recordings, recently deleted recordings, and favorites are grouped into Smart Folders—folders that automatically gather files by type and subject matter.

Mark recordings as favorites


Do one of the following:


- In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to mark as a favorite, tap , then tap .
- Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, tap Move, then tap favorites.

Recordings marked as favorites automatically appear in the Favorites folder.

Organize recordings into folders





You can group related recordings together into folders so you can locate them easily.

1. Tap Edit above the list of recordings.
2. Select one or more recordings, then tap Move.
3. If you want to create a new folder for the recordings, tap , then type a name for the folder.
4. Tap the folder where you want to store the selected recordings.


To view your folders, tap ; tap a folder to check its contents.

To return to the list of recordings, tap All Recordings above the folders.

Delete or reorder folders

1. Tap  to go to the list of folders.
 2. Tap Edit above the folders, then do any of the following:
 - *Delete a folder:* Tap  next to the folder, then tap .
 - *Change the order of the folders:* Drag  next to any folder.
 3. Tap Done.
-


Search for or rename a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

You can search for your recordings in the Voice Memos app , and rename any recording.

Search for a recording


1. In the Voice Memos list, swipe down to reveal the search field.
 2. Tap the search field, enter part or all of the recording name, then tap Search.
-




Rename a recording

A recording is initially saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if [Location Services](#) is turned on in Settings  > Privacy.


To change the name, tap the recording, tap the name, then type a new one.

Share a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone

In the Voice Memos app , you can share a recording with others (or send it to your Mac or another device) via AirDrop, Mail, Messages, and more.

1. In your Voice Memos list, tap a saved recording, then tap .
 2. Tap , choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap Done or .
-

Duplicate a recording in Voice Memos on iPhone


In the Voice Memos app , you can duplicate a recording, which is useful when you need another version of it. You can make changes to the copy, save it, and [give it a new name](#).

In the Voice Memos list, tap a recording, tap , then tap Duplicate.

The copy appears right below the original version in the list and has “copy” added to its name. You can tap the name, then type a new one.

Wallet

Keep cards and passes in Wallet on iPhone

Use the Wallet app  to keep your cards and passes in one place for easy access. Wallet can store the following and more:


- Cards for Apple Pay, such as Apple Card and Apple Cash; see [Set up Apple Pay](#)
-

- Transit cards; see [Pay for transit](#)
- Digital car keys; see [Unlock and start your car with digital car keys](#)
- Student ID cards; see [Use student ID cards](#)
- Rewards cards, boarding passes, and event tickets; see [Add and manage passes](#)



(Apple Card and Apple Cash are available only in the U.S.)

Set up Apple Pay in Wallet on iPhone

Using Apple Pay can be simpler than using a physical card, and safer too. With your cards stored in the Wallet app , you can use Apple Pay to make secure payments in stores, for transit, in apps, and on websites that support Apple Pay. In Messages, use Apple Pay to send and receive money from friends and family and to make purchases using Business Chat.

To set up Apple Pay, add your debit, credit, and prepaid cards to Wallet.



(Apple Card and Apple Cash are available only in the U.S.)

Add a credit or debit card

1. In Wallet, tap **+**. You may be asked to sign in with your Apple ID.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *Add a new card:* Position iPhone so that your card appears in the frame, or enter the card details manually.
 - *Add your previous cards:* Select the card associated with your Apple ID, cards you use with Apple Pay on your other devices, or cards that you removed. Tap Continue, then enter the CVV number of each card.

Alternatively, you may be able to add your card from the app of the bank or card issuer.

The card issuer determines whether your card is eligible for Apple Pay, and may ask you for additional information to complete the verification process.


Set the default card and rearrange your cards

The first card you add to Wallet becomes your default card for payments. To set a different card as the default, move it to the front of the stack.

1. In Wallet, choose your default card.
 2. Touch and hold the card, then drag it to the front of the stack.
 3. To reposition another card, touch and hold it, then drag it to a new location.
-

Note: The availability of Apple Pay and its features varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Countries and regions that support Apple Pay](#).

Make contactless payments using Apple Pay on iPhone

With your Apple Cash, credit, and debit cards stored in the Wallet app  on iPhone, you can use Apple Pay for secure, contactless payments in stores, restaurants, and more.


Find places that accept Apple Pay

You can use Apple Pay wherever you see one of these symbols:



In Japan, contactless readers may also display the following symbols:



 **Ask Siri.** Say something like:

- "Where can I use my Apple Pay?"
- "Show me coffee shops that take Apple Pay"
- "Gas stations that accept Apple Pay"

[Learn how to ask Siri](#)

Pay with your default card on an iPhone with Face ID

1. Double-click the side button.
2. When your default card appears, glance at iPhone to authenticate with Face ID, or enter your passcode.

3. Position the top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the contactless reader until you see Done and a checkmark on the screen.



[Watch the demo](#) to see how it works.

Pay with your default card on an iPhone with Touch ID

1. Rest your finger on Touch ID.
2. Position the top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the contactless reader until you see Done and a checkmark on the screen.

[Watch the demo](#) to see how it works.

Pay with a different card instead of your default card

1. When your default card appears, tap it, then choose another card.
 2. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
 3. Position the top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the contactless reader until you see Done and a checkmark on the screen.
-


Use a rewards card

At participating stores, you can receive or redeem rewards when you use Apple Pay.

1. [Add your rewards card](#) to Wallet.

2. At the payment terminal in the store, present your rewards card by holding iPhone near the contactless reader.

Apple Pay then switches to your default payment card to pay for the purchase. In some stores, you can apply your rewards card and payment card in one step. In other stores, you need to wait until the terminal or cashier asks for payment.

To have your rewards card appear automatically when you're in the store, tap  on the card, then turn on Automatic Selection.

Use Apple Pay at stores in Japan

You need an iPhone model that supports Apple Pay in Japan and a card issued by a bank in Japan.

1. Tell the cashier what type of card you're using, as shown on the front of your card in Wallet.
2. Complete the payment.

Note: If you have Location Services turned on, the location of your iPhone at the time you make a payment may be sent to Apple and the card issuer to help prevent fraud. See [Control the location information you share on iPhone](#).

Use Apple Pay in apps, App Clips, and Safari on iPhone

You can make purchases using Apple Pay in apps, in App Clips, and on the web using Safari wherever you see the Apple Pay button.



Pay in an app, in an App Clip, or on the web

1. During checkout, tap the Apple Pay button.
2. Review the payment information.

You can change the credit card, shipping address, and contact information.

3. Complete the payment:

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Double-click the side button, then glance at iPhone to authenticate with Face ID, or enter your passcode.
- *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Authenticate with Touch ID or enter your passcode.

Shop in Safari on your Mac and pay on iPhone

Before you begin, do the following:


- Sign in with your Apple ID on both devices.
- Turn on Bluetooth on both devices.
- Ensure that iPhone is nearby and connected to a cellular or Wi-Fi network.

When you're ready to checkout, do the following:


1. On your Mac, begin checkout with the Apple Pay payment option.
2. Review the payment information.

You can change the credit card, shipping address, and contact information.


3. On your iPhone, review the payment summary and complete the payment.

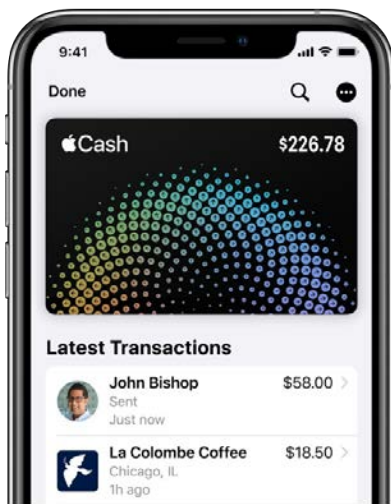
If you don't want to use Apple Pay on your iPhone to make payments on your Mac, go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn off Allow Payments on Mac.

Change your default shipping and contact information

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay.
 2. Set any of the following:
 - Shipping address
 - Email
 - Phone
-

Set up and use Apple Cash on iPhone (U.S. only)


When you [receive money in Messages](#), it's added to your Apple Cash card in the Wallet app . You can use Apple Cash right away wherever you would use Apple Pay. You can also transfer your Apple Cash balance to your bank account.



Setup Apple Cash

Set up Apple Cash

Do any of the following:


- Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn on Apple Cash.
 - In Messages, send or accept a payment. See [Send and receive money with Apple Pay \(U.S. only\)](#).
-

Use Apple Cash

You can use Apple Cash wherever you use Apple Pay:


- [Send and receive money with Apple Pay \(U.S. only\)](#)
 - [Make contactless payments using Apple Pay](#)
 - [Pay in apps or on the web using Apple Pay](#)
-

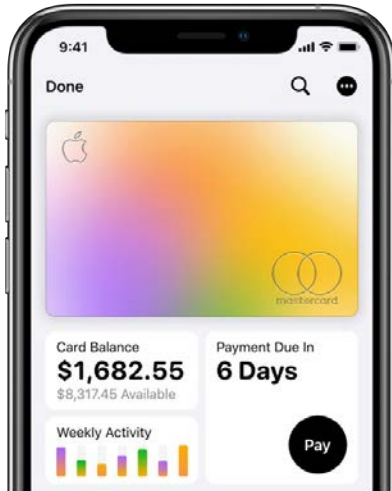
Manage your Apple Cash

1. In Wallet, tap the Apple Cash card.
 2. View your latest transactions, or scroll down to see all your transactions grouped by year.
 3. Tap , then do any of the following:
 - Add money from a debit card in Wallet.
 - Transfer money to your bank. See the Apple Support article [Transfer money from Apple Cash to your debit card or bank account](#).
 - Update your bank account information.
 - Request a statement.
 - Choose to manually or automatically accept all payments. You have 7 days to manually accept a payment before it's returned to the sender.
 - See your suggested PIN. Apple Cash doesn't require a PIN because every payment is authenticated by Face ID, Touch ID, or a secure passcode. However, some terminals may still require you to enter a four-digit code to complete the transaction.
 - Verify your identity for account servicing and to increase your transaction limits.
 - Contact Apple Support.
-


Apple Cash and sending and receiving payments through Apple Pay are services provided by Green Dot Bank, member FDIC.

Set up and use Apple Card on iPhone (U.S. only)

Apple Card is a credit card created by Apple and designed to help you lead a healthier financial life. You can sign up for Apple Card in the Wallet app  on iPhone in minutes and start using it with Apple Pay right away in stores, in apps, or online worldwide. Apple Card gives you easy-to-understand, real-time views of your latest transactions and balance right in Wallet, and Apple Card support is available anytime by simply sending a text from Messages.



Get Apple Card


1. In Wallet, tap , then tap Apply for Apple Card.
2. Enter your information, then agree to the terms and conditions to submit your application.
3. Review the details of your Apple Card offer, including the credit limit and APR, then accept Apple Card or tap No Thanks to decline.
4. If you accept the terms, you can do any of the following:
 - Set Apple Card as your default card for Apple Pay transactions.
 - Get a physical Apple Card to use where Apple Pay isn't accepted.

Use Apple Card

You can use Apple Card wherever you use Apple Pay:

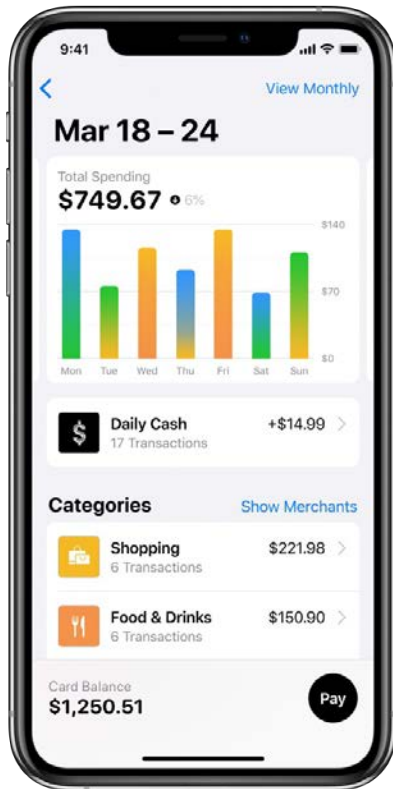
- [Make contactless payments using Apple Pay](#)
- [Pay in apps or on the web using Apple Pay](#)

You can also use Apple Card at locations where Apple Pay isn't accepted:

- *In apps, on the web, or over the phone:* Tap , then tap Card Information to see the card number, expiration date, and security code. Use this information to make your purchase.
 - *In stores, restaurants, and other locations:* Use the physical card.
-

View transactions and statements

1. In Wallet, tap Apple Card.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Review your transactions:* View your latest transactions, or scroll down to see all your transactions grouped by month and year.
 - *See weekly or monthly activity:* Tap Weekly Activity to see your spending this week grouped in categories such as Shopping, Food & Drinks, and Services. Swipe right to see previous weeks, or tap View Monthly for a monthly summary.

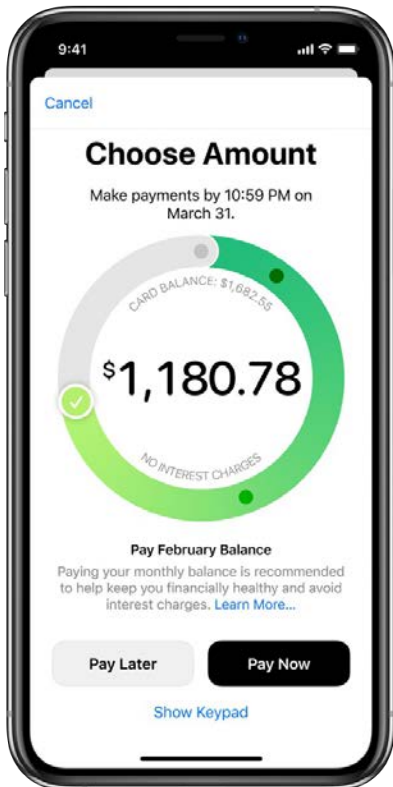


- *Get monthly statements:* Tap Card Balance to see last month's balance, new spending, and payments and credits. Scroll down to see your monthly statements. Tap a statement to see the summary for that month, download a PDF statement, or export transactions to a CSV or OFX file.
-

Make payments

Tap the Payment button. Or tap , then choose any of the following:

- *Scheduled Payments:* Choose Pay My Bill or Pay Different Amount, enter the payment details (such as the account and date), then authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
- *Make a Payment:* Drag the checkmark to adjust the payment amount or tap Show Keypad to enter an amount, tap Pay Now or Pay Later, review the payment details (such as the payment account), then authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.




View Apple Card details, change settings, contact support, and more

Tap , then do any of the following:

- View card information.
- View credit details.
- Add or remove linked bank accounts.
- Lock your physical card and request a replacement card.
- Edit Express Transit settings.

- Get support through Messages, by phone, or on the [Apple Card Support website](#).
-


Manage Apple Pay cards and activity on iPhone

In Wallet , you can manage the cards you use for Apple Pay and review your recent transactions.


View the information for a card and change its settings

1. In Wallet, tap the card.

Note: The last transaction may appear, showing an authorized amount that may differ from the amount of the payment charged to your account. For example, a gas station may request an authorization of \$99, even though you pumped only \$25 worth of gasoline. To see the final charges, see the statement from your card issuer, which includes all Apple Pay transactions.

2. Tap , then do any of the following:
 - Tap Transactions to view your recent history. To hide this information, turn off Transaction History. To view all your Apple Pay activity, see the statement from your card issuer.
 - View the last four digits of the card number and Device Account Number—the number transmitted to the merchant.
 - Change the billing address.
 - Remove the card from Wallet.
-


Change your Apple Pay settings

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay.
 2. Choose options such as the following:
 - *Double-Click Side Button:* (on an iPhone with Face ID) Your cards and passes appear on the screen when you double-click the side button.
 - *Double-Click Home Button:* (on an iPhone with a Home button) Your cards and passes appear on the screen when you double-click the Home button.
 - *Allow Payments on Mac:* Allows iPhone to confirm payments on your nearby Mac.
-

Remove your cards from Apple Pay if your iPhone is lost or stolen

If you turned on [Find My iPhone](#), you can use it to help locate and secure your iPhone.

To remove your cards from Apple Pay, do any of the following:

- *On a Mac or PC:* [Sign in to your Apple ID account](#). In the Devices section, click the lost iPhone. Below the list of cards, click Remove all.
- *On another iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch:* Go to Settings  > [your name], tap the lost iPhone, then tap Remove All Cards (below Apple Pay).
- Call the issuers of your cards.

If you remove cards, you can add them again later.

Note: If you sign out of iCloud in Settings > [your name], all your credit and debit cards for Apple Pay are removed from iPhone. You can add the cards again the next time you sign in with your Apple ID.

Pay for transit using iPhone

With your transit cards stored in the Wallet app , you can use your iPhone to pay for your fare.

Pay for transit at a fare gate

If you're not using Express Transit, do the following:

1. Make sure your device is turned on (it doesn't need to be connected to a network).
2. As you approach a fare gate or board a bus, do one of the following:
 - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Double-click the side button, then glance at iPhone to authenticate with Face ID, or enter your passcode.
 - *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* With the Lock Screen showing on your device, double-click the Home button, then rest your finger on Touch ID.
3. Position the top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the contactless reader at the transit gate until you see Done and a checkmark on the screen.

See the Apple Support article [Where you can ride transit with Apple Pay](#).

Pay for your ride with Express Transit

With Express Transit (available in certain countries or regions), you don't need to authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode, and you don't need to wake or unlock your device or open an app.

1. Set up Express Transit; see the Apple Support articles [Using Suica on iPhone or Apple Watch in Japan](#) and [Use Express Transit with Apple Pay in Beijing and Shanghai](#).
2. As you approach a fare gate or board the bus, make sure your device is turned on (it doesn't need to be connected to a network).

3. Position the top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the contactless reader at the transit gate until you see Done and a checkmark on the screen.

On models that support Express Cards with power reserve, your Express Cards may be available for up to five hours when your iPhone needs to be charged. To check if Express Cards are available when iPhone needs to be charged, press the side button (doing this often may significantly reduce the power reserve for Express Cards). If you turn off your iPhone, this feature isn't available.


Unlock and start your car with keys in Wallet on iPhone

Some car makers offer the option to control your vehicle with a digital car key. If your car is compatible, you can add this key to the Wallet app on your iPhone.

With car keys in Wallet, you can use your iPhone or Apple Watch to unlock and start your car by placing your device near specific locations. This feature works for up to five hours even after your iPhone battery runs out. You can also use the Wallet app to share your car key with other people.

See the Apple Support article [Use your iPhone or Apple Watch as a car key](#).

Use student ID cards in Wallet on iPhone

On supported campuses, you can add your contactless student ID card to the Wallet app , and then use your iPhone to access locations where your student ID card is accepted, such as your dorm, the library, and campus events. You can even pay for laundry, snacks, and meals around campus.

Add your student ID card to Wallet

1. Download the app that supports student ID cards for your school.
 2. Open the app, sign in, then add your student ID card to Wallet.
-

Use your student ID card

To present your student ID card at a reader, position the top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the reader until iPhone vibrates.

Manage your student ID card

Tap the card in Wallet, tap , then do any of the following:


- See your name and ID number.
- View your account balance.
- Contact the card issuer.

- Turn on Express Mode to use your card without Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode.

On an iPhone that supports Express Cards with power reserve, your Express Card may be available for up to five hours when your iPhone needs to be charged. To check if Express Cards are available when iPhone needs to be charged, press the side or top button (doing this often may significantly reduce the power reserve for Express Cards). If you turn off your iPhone, this feature isn't available.

See the Apple Support article [Use student ID cards in Wallet on your iPhone or Apple Watch](#).

Add and manage passes in Wallet on iPhone

Use the Wallet app  to keep rewards cards, coupons, boarding passes, movie and event tickets, and more in one place for easy access. Passes can include useful information, such as the balance on your coffee card, a coupon's expiration date, or boarding information for a flight.




(The Apple Cash card is available only in the U.S.)

Add a pass

You may be asked to add a pass within an app after you perform an action such as purchasing a ticket. Or, you can tap Add to Apple Wallet when you see it from the following:

- Wallet-enabled apps
- Mail or Messages
- Web browser such as Safari
- AirDrop sharing
- Wallet notification after you use Apple Pay at a supported merchant
- QR code or barcode


To scan the code, open the Camera app , then position iPhone so that the code appears on the screen.


Rearrange your passes

1. In the Wallet stack, touch and hold the pass you want to move.
2. Drag the pass to a new place in the stack.

The pass order is updated on your iPhone, iPod touch, and Apple Watch where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

View the information for a pass and change its settings


1. Tap the pass, then tap .
 2. Choose any of the following (not all options are available on all passes):
 - *Automatic Updates*: Allow the pass to receive updates from the issuer.
 - *Suggest on Lock Screen*: Show the pass based on time or location.

To allow location access, go to Settings  > Privacy > Location Services > Wallet, then tap While Using the App.
 - *Automatic Selection*: Select the pass where it's requested.
 - *Share Pass*: Send the pass to a friend using Mail or Messages.
 - *Remove Pass*: Delete the pass from all your devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID.
 3. Scroll down to view other information such as the associated app, usage details, and terms and conditions.
-


Change the settings for all your passes

- *Keep your passes up to date on your other devices:* Sign in with your Apple ID on your iPhone, iPod touch, and Apple Watch.


Note: This setting applies only to passes in Wallet, not to cards you use with Apple Pay.

- *Set notification options:* Go to Settings  > Notifications > Wallet.
- *Prevent passes from appearing on the Lock Screen:* Go to Settings > Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn off Double-Click Side Button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Double-Click Home Button (on other iPhone models).

Use your passes in Wallet on iPhone

With your passes in the Wallet app , you can earn points on a rewards card, use a coupon at a store, board a flight, and more.


Use a pass with a QR code or barcode


1. If a notification for a pass appears on the Lock Screen, tap the notification; if there's no notification, open the Wallet app .
2. Tap the pass, then present the QR code or barcode to the reader.




Use a contactless pass


With your pass in Wallet, you can use your iPhone to present your pass at a contactless reader.


1. If a notification for a pass appears on the Lock Screen, tap the notification. If there's no notification, open the Wallet app , then tap the pass.
2. Position the top of iPhone within a few centimeters of the reader until iPhone vibrates.

To see the QR code or barcode (if available), tap .

Check the weather on iPhone

Use the Weather app  to check the weather for your current location or in other places. You can also view the upcoming forecast, see alerts about severe weather conditions and, if rain or snow are on the way, view a next-hour precipitation chart (severe weather and next-hour precipitation alerts are not available in all countries or regions).

Note: Weather uses Location Services to get the forecast for your current location. To turn on Location Services, go to Settings  > Privacy > Location Services.

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "What's the weather for today?" or "How windy is it out there?"


[Learn how to ask Siri.](#)




Check the weather forecast and conditions



Open Weather to do any of the following:


- *Check local weather conditions:* The details for your current location are available when you open Weather.
 - *View the hourly forecast:* Swipe the hourly display left or right.
 - *View the ten-day forecast:* Scroll down to view weather conditions, chance of precipitation, and high and low temps for the coming days.
 - *View next-hour precipitation:* When rain or snow are coming in the next hour, a minute-by-minute precipitation chart appears at the top of the screen (U.S. only).
 - *View severe weather alerts:* Alerts about severe weather conditions such as winter storms and flash floods appear at the top of the screen. Tap to read the full government-issued alert (not available in all countries or regions).
 - *View more weather details:* Scroll down to see air quality, humidity, wind speed, and more (air quality information is not available in all countries or regions).
- Note:* The air quality scale appears above the hourly forecast when air quality reaches a level of particular interest for that location.
- *Check the weather in other locations:* Swipe left or right on the screen, or tap .

Add, delete, and rearrange locations in your weather list

1. Tap  to see your weather list.




2. Do any of the following:

- *Add a location:* Tap , enter the name of the city, zip code, or airport code to view the weather, then tap Add.
- *Delete a location:* Swipe left on the location, then tap Delete.
- *Rearrange the order of locations on your list:* Touch and hold the location, then move it up or down.

Your list of locations stays up to date across your devices when you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Switch between Fahrenheit and Celsius

1. Tap .
2. Tap °F or °C at the bottom of the list.

Add the Weather widget to your iPhone Home Screen

Use the Weather widget to check weather at a glance on your iPhone Home Screen.

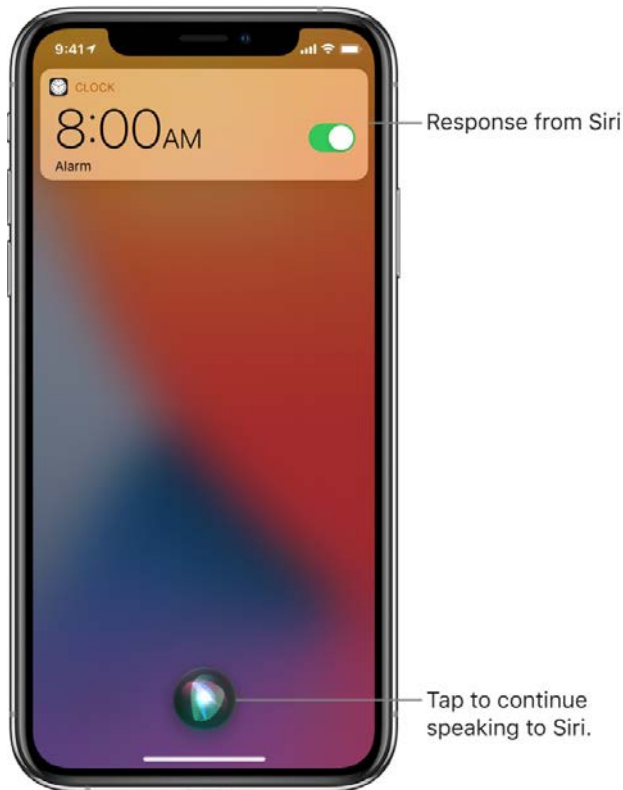
See [Add widgets to the iPhone Home Screen](#).

Siri


Ask Siri on iPhone

Talking to Siri is a quick way to get things done. Ask Siri to translate a phrase, set a timer, find a location, report on the weather, and more. The more you use Siri, the better it knows what you need.

To use Siri, iPhone must be [connected to the internet](#). Cellular charges may apply.



Set up Siri

If you didn't set up Siri when you first set up your iPhone, go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then do any of the following:

- *If you want to summon Siri with your voice:* Turn on Listen for "Hey Siri."
- *If you want to summon Siri with a button:* Turn on Press Side Button for Siri (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Press Home for Siri (on an iPhone with a Home button).


To change additional Siri settings, see [Change Siri settings on iPhone](#).


Summon Siri with your voice

When you summon Siri with your voice, Siri responds out loud.

1. Say "Hey Siri," then ask Siri a question or to do a task for you.

For example, say something like "Hey Siri, how's the weather today?" or "Hey Siri, set an alarm for 8 a.m."

2. To ask Siri another question or to do another task, say "Hey Siri" again or tap .

Note: To prevent iPhone from responding to "Hey Siri," place your iPhone face down, or go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then turn off Listen for "Hey Siri."


You can also say "Hey Siri" to summon Siri while wearing AirPods Pro or AirPods (2nd generation). See [Use Siri with AirPods on iPhone](#).

Summon Siri with a button

When you summon Siri with a button, Siri responds out loud when iPhone is in ring mode and silently when iPhone is in silent mode. See [Put iPhone in ring or silent mode](#). To change this, see [Change how Siri responds](#).

1. Do one of the following:
 - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Press and hold the side button.
 - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press and hold the Home button.
 - *EarPods:* Press and hold the center or call button.
 - *CarPlay:* Press and hold the voice command button on the steering wheel, or touch and hold the Home button on the CarPlay Home Screen. (See [Use Siri to Control CarPlay](#).)
 - *Siri Eyes Free:* Press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel.
2. When Siri appears, ask Siri a question or to do a task for you.


For example, say something like "What's 18 percent of 225?" or "Set the timer for 3 minutes."

3. To ask Siri another question or to do another task, tap .


You can also summon Siri with a press and hold or a double tap on AirPods. See [Use Siri with AirPods on iPhone](#).

Make a correction if Siri misunderstands you

- *Rephrase your request:* Tap , then say your request in a different way.

- *Spell out part of your request:* Tap , then repeat your request by spelling out any words that Siri didn't understand. For example, say "Call," then spell the person's name.
 - *Change a message before sending it:* Say "Change it."
 - *Edit your request with text:* If you see your request onscreen, you can edit it. Tap the request, then use the onscreen keyboard.
-

Type instead of speaking to Siri

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.
 2. To make a request, summon Siri, then use the keyboard and text field to ask Siri a question or to do a task for you.
-

If Siri doesn't work as expected on your iPhone, see the Apple Support article [If Siri or "Hey Siri" isn't working](#).

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the Apple Support article [Ask Siri, Dictation & Privacy](#).

Find out what Siri can do on iPhone

Use Siri on iPhone to get information and perform tasks. Siri and its response appear on top of what you're currently doing, allowing you to refer to information onscreen.

Siri is interactive. When Siri displays a web link, you can tap it to see more information in your default web browser. When the onscreen response from Siri includes buttons or controls, you can tap them to take further action. And you can tap Siri again to ask another question or do an additional task for you.

- *Find answers to your questions:* Find information from the web, get sports scores, get arithmetic calculations, and more. Say something like "Hey Siri, what causes a rainbow," "Hey Siri, what was the score of the Orioles game yesterday," or "Hey Siri, what's the derivative of cosine x?"

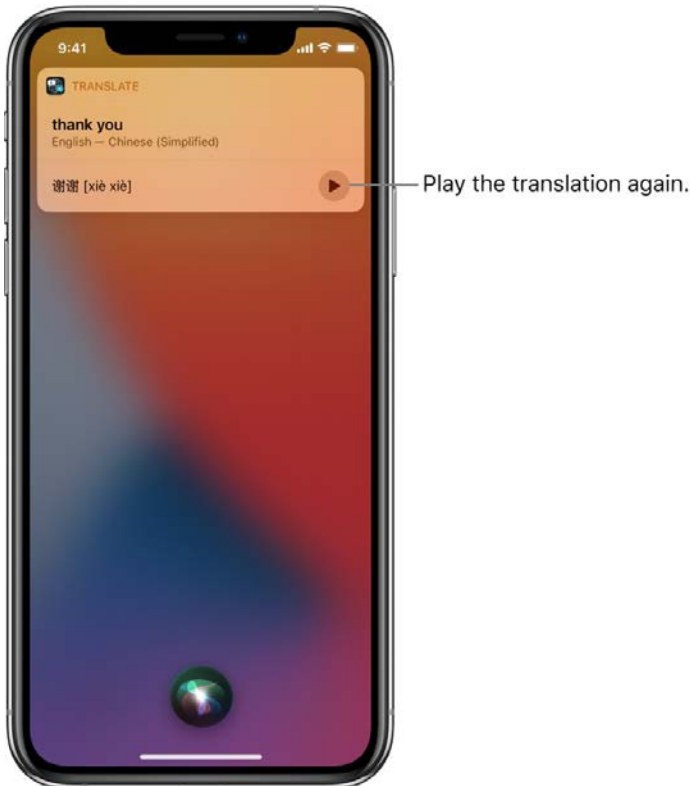
- *Perform tasks with apps on iPhone:* Use Siri to control apps with your voice. For example, to create an event in Calendar, say something like “Hey Siri, set up a meeting with Gordon at 9,” or to add an item to Reminders, say something like “Hey Siri, add zucchini and garlic to my groceries list.”



- *Send and reply to messages:* Say something like “Hey Siri, send a message to Eliza saying how about tomorrow” or “Hey Siri, reply that’s great news.” You can even use Siri to send audio messages.

If you connect your AirPods (AirPods Pro and AirPods 2nd generation) to your iPhone and a message arrives, Siri can read the message to you, even if your iPhone is locked. Siri listens after reading messages so you can reply without saying “Hey Siri.” See [Use Siri with AirPods on iPhone](#).

- *Translate languages:* Say something like “Hey Siri, how do you say Thank You in Mandarin?” or “Hey Siri, what languages can you translate?”





- *Play a radio station:* Say something like “Hey Siri, play Wild 94.9” or “Hey Siri, tune into ESPN Radio.”
- *Let Siri show you more examples:* Say something like “Hey Siri, what can you do?”

Additional examples appear throughout this guide. To learn more about Siri, go to the [Siri website](#).

Tell Siri about yourself on iPhone

If you tell Siri about yourself—including things like your home and work addresses, and your relationships—you can get personalized service so you can say things like “Send a message to my husband” and “FaceTime mom.”

Tell Siri who you are

1. Open Contacts , then [fill out your contact information](#).
2. Go to Settings  > Siri & Search > My Information, then tap your name.

Tell Siri about your preferences


Tell Siri now to say your name

Say something like “Hey Siri, learn to pronounce my name.”

Tell Siri about a relationship

Say something like “Hey Siri, Eliza Block is my wife” or “Hey Siri, Ashley Kamin is my mom.”

Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices

On each device, go to Settings , then sign in with the same Apple ID.

If you use iCloud, your Siri settings stay up to date across your Apple devices using end-to-end encryption. If you set up Hey Siri, a small sample of your requests also stay up to date using end-to-end encryption to improve personalized Hey Siri recognition on each device.

To prevent Siri information from being updated between iPhone and your other devices, go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud, then turn off Siri.

Note: Siri uses Location Services when your requests require knowing your location. When Location Services is turned on, the location of your device at the time you make a request is sent to Apple to improve the accuracy of responses from Siri and Dictation. See [Control the location information you share on iPhone](#).

Add Siri Shortcuts on iPhone

Some apps offer shortcuts for things you do frequently, so you can ask Siri to do them for you. For example, a travel app might let you view your upcoming trip event just by asking Siri “Where am I going next?”


Add a suggested shortcut

Tap Add to Siri when you see a suggestion for a shortcut, then follow the onscreen instructions to record a phrase of your choice that performs the shortcut.

You can also use the Shortcuts app to create a new shortcut that uses Siri, or to manage, re-record, and delete existing Siri shortcuts. See the [Shortcuts User Guide](#).

Use a shortcut

Summon Siri, then speak your phrase for the shortcut. See [Ask Siri on iPhone](#).

Based on your routines and how you use your apps, Siri also suggests shortcuts on the Home Screen, the Lock Screen, and when you start a search. To turn off shortcut suggestions for an app, go to Settings  > Siri & Search, tap the app, then turn off Suggest Shortcuts for App for the Home Screen, the Lock Screen, or both.

About Siri Suggestions on iPhone

Siri makes suggestions for what you might want to do next, such as call into a meeting or confirm an appointment, based on your routines and how you use your apps.



For example, Siri might help when you do any of the following:

- *Glance at the Lock Screen or start a search:* As Siri learns your routines, you get suggestions for just what you need, at just the right time.
- *Create email and events:* When you start adding people to an email or calendar event, Siri suggests the people you included in previous emails or events.
- *Receive calls:* If you get an incoming call from an unknown number, Siri lets you know who might be calling—based on phone numbers included in your emails.
- *Leave for an event:* If your calendar event includes a location, Siri assesses traffic conditions and notifies you when to leave.

- *See your flight status:* If you have a boarding pass in Mail or Wallet, Siri shows your flight status in Maps. You can tap the suggestion when you're ready to get directions to the airport.
- *Type:* As you enter text, Siri can suggest names of movies, places—anything you viewed on iPhone recently. If you tell a friend you're on your way, Siri can even suggest your estimated arrival time.
- *Search in Safari:* Siri suggests websites and other information in the search field as you type.

Above the keyboard, Siri also suggests words and phrases based on what you were just reading.
- *Confirm an appointment or book a flight on a travel website:* Siri asks if you want to add it to your calendar.
- *Read News stories:* As Siri learns which topics you're interested in, they'll be suggested in News.

To change the settings for Siri Suggestions, see [Change Siri settings on iPhone](#).

Your personal information—which is encrypted and remains private—stays up to date across all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID. As Siri learns about you on one device, your experience with Siri is improved on your other devices. If you don't want Siri personalization to update across your devices, you can disable Siri in iCloud settings. See [Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices](#).

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the Apple Support article [Siri Suggestions, Search & Privacy](#).

Use Siri in your car

With CarPlay or Siri Eyes Free, you can keep focused on the road by using Siri to make calls, send text messages, play music that's on your iPhone, get directions, and use other iPhone features.

CarPlay (available in select cars) takes the things you want to do with your iPhone while driving and puts them on your car's built-in display. CarPlay uses Siri, so you can ask Siri for what you want. See [Use Siri to Control CarPlay](#).

With Siri Eyes Free (available in select cars), use your voice to control features of your iPhone without looking at or touching iPhone. To connect iPhone to your car, use Bluetooth (refer to the user guide that came with your car if you need to). To summon Siri, press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel until you hear the Siri tone, then make a request.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information for iPhone](#).

Change Siri settings on iPhone

You can change the voice for Siri, prevent access to Siri when your device is locked, and more.

For information about how to set up and use Siri, see [Ask Siri on iPhone](#).

Change when Siri responds

Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then do any of the following:

- *Prevent Siri from responding to the voice command "Hey Siri":* Turn off Listen for "Hey Siri."
- *Prevent Siri from responding to the side or Home button:* Turn off Press Side Button for Siri (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Press Home for Siri (on an iPhone with a Home button).
- *Prevent access to Siri when iPhone is locked:* Turn off Allow Siri When Locked.
- *Change the language Siri responds to:* Tap Language, then select a new language.


You can also summon Siri by typing. See [Type instead of speaking to Siri](#).

Change how Siri responds

Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then do any of the following:

- *Change the voice for Siri:* (not available in all languages) Tap Siri Voice, then choose a male or female voice for Siri or change the accent.
- *Change when Siri provides voice responses:* Tap Siri Responses, then choose an option below Spoken Responses.
- *Always see the response from Siri onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Siri Captions.
- *See your request onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Speech.

Hide apps when you summon Siri

If you don't want the active app to remain visible behind Siri, go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn off Show Apps Behind Siri.

Change where Siri Suggestions appear

Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then turn on or off any of the following:


- Suggestions while Searching
- Suggestions on Lock Screen
- Suggestions on Home Screen

- Suggestions when Sharing

See [About Siri Suggestions on iPhone](#).

Change Siri settings for a specific app

You can change the [Siri Suggestions](#) and [Siri Shortcuts](#) settings for any app.


Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then scroll down and select an app.

Adjust the Siri voice volume

You can say something like, “Turn up the volume” or “Turn down the volume.”

Or use the volume buttons. See [Adjust the volume on iPhone](#).

Retrain Siri with your voice

Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, turn off Listen for “Hey Siri,” then turn on Listen for “Hey Siri” again.

To change Siri accessibility settings, see [Use accessibility features with Siri on iPhone](#).

If Siri doesn’t work as expected on your iPhone, see the Apple Support article [If Siri or “Hey Siri” isn’t working](#).

Family Sharing

Set up Family Sharing on iPhone


With Family Sharing, family members can share purchases, subscriptions, an iCloud storage plan, Screen Time information, and more, all without sharing accounts.

To use Family Sharing, one adult family member (the *organizer*) chooses features for the family to share and invites up to five other family members to participate. When family members join, Family Sharing is set up on their devices automatically. You can be part of only one family group at a time.

Family Sharing is available on eligible devices. See the Apple Support article [System requirements for iCloud](#).

Set up Family Sharing


Family Sharing requires you (the organizer) to sign in with your Apple ID and to confirm the Apple ID you use for the iTunes Store, the App Store, and Apple Books (you usually use the same Apple ID for everything).

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Family Sharing, then follow the onscreen instructions to set up your family group.

You can add family members or create an account for a child.

2. Tap a feature you want to share, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To learn more about Family Sharing features, see the following:


- *Subscriptions and iCloud storage:* You can share subscriptions to Apple Music, Apple News+, Apple Arcade, Apple TV+, and Apple TV channels. You can also share an iCloud storage plan. See [Share subscriptions and iCloud storage with family members](#).
- *Purchases:* You can share iTunes Store, App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV purchases. See [Download family members' purchases](#).
- *Locations:* When you share your location with family members, they can use the Find My app  to see your location and help locate a missing device. See [Share your location with family members](#) and [Locate a family member's missing device](#).
- *Features for children:* You can manage your children's spending and how they use their Apple devices. See [Turn on Ask To Buy for children](#), [Set up Apple Cash Family](#), and [Set up Screen Time through Family Sharing](#).

Depending on the features you choose, you may be asked to set up a subscription. If you choose to share App Store, music, movie, TV, and book purchases with your family members, you agree to pay for any purchases they initiate while part of the family group. Adult and teen family members can [turn off purchase sharing for themselves](#).

You can also [share photos, a calendar, and more with family members](#).

Add a family member

The organizer of the family group can add a family member.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Family Sharing, then tap Add Member.




2. Tap Invite People, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can send the invitation using AirDrop, Messages, or Mail. If you're near the family member, you can also tap Invite in Person and ask the family member to enter their Apple ID and password on the screen called "Family Member's Apple ID."

Create an Apple ID for a child


The organizer, a parent, or a guardian can create an Apple ID for a child in a Family group.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Family Sharing.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *If you're the organizer:* Tap Add Member, tap Create an Account for a Child, then follow the onscreen instructions.
 - *If you're a parent or guardian:* Tap Add Child, then follow the onscreen instructions.


For more information about child accounts, see the Apple Support article [Family Sharing and Apple ID for your child](#).

See what you're sharing with your family

You can see what you're sharing with your family and adjust sharing settings at any time. Features you share with your family appear above those you haven't shared.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Family Sharing.
 2. Tap a feature, then do any of the following:
 - *If you haven't set up the feature:* Follow the onscreen instructions to set it up.
 - *If you have set up the feature:* Review and adjust sharing settings.
-

Leave or turn off Family Sharing

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Family Sharing > [your name].
2. Do one of the following:
 - *Disband the family group:* Tap Stop Using Family. Only the organizer can disband the family group.
 - *Leave family sharing:* Tap Stop Using Family Sharing.

Young children cannot remove themselves from a family group, and they must be moved to another family before you disband yours. See the Apple Support article [Leave Family Sharing](#).


Download family members' purchases on iPhone


When you [set up Family Sharing](#), you and up to five family members can share iTunes Store, App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV purchases.

When your family shares App Store, music, movie, TV, and book purchases, all items are billed directly to the family organizer's Apple ID account. Adult and teen family members can [turn off purchase sharing for themselves](#). The family organizer can also require that children in the family group request approval for purchases or free downloads. See [Turn on Ask To Buy for children on iPhone](#).




Once purchased, an item is added to the initiating family member's account and eligible purchases are shared with the rest of the family.

Download shared purchases from the iTunes Store




1. Open the iTunes Store , tap More, then tap Purchased.
2. Choose a family member.

3. Tap a category (for example, Music), tap a purchased item, then tap  to download it.
-



Download shared purchases from the App Store

1. Open the App Store .
 2. Tap —or your profile picture—at the top right.
 3. Tap Purchased, choose a family member, then tap  next to a purchased item to download it.
-

Download shared purchases from Apple Books

1. Open the Books app .
 2. Tap , or your profile picture, at the top right.
 3. Tap the name of a family member under Family Purchases, then tap a category (for example, Books or Audiobooks).
 4. Tap All, Recent Purchases, or a genre, then tap  next to a purchased item to download it.
-

Download shared purchases from the Apple TV app

1. Open the Apple TV app .
 2. Tap Library, tap Family Sharing, then choose a family member.
 3. Tap a category (for example, TV Shows or Movies) or a genre, tap a purchased item, then tap  to download it.
-

If you don't want to share a specific item with your family members, see the Apple Support article [Hide and unhide music, movies, TV shows, audiobooks, and books](#).


You can also [share subscriptions and iCloud storage with family members](#).

Stop sharing purchases with your family members on iPhone

With [Family Sharing](#), the organizer can turn on purchase sharing. Any purchases family members make from the iTunes Store, the App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV are billed directly to the organizer's Apple ID account.

If adult and teen family members don't want to share purchases and billing information with family members, they can turn off purchase sharing for themselves.

Note: The family organizer can also require that children in the family group request approval for purchases or free downloads. See [Turn on Ask To Buy for children on iPhone](#).


1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Family Sharing.
2. Tap Purchase Sharing, then turn off Share Purchases with Family.

If the organizer wants to turn off purchase sharing entirely, they can tap Stop Purchase Sharing.

If you don't want to share a specific item with your family members, see the Apple Support article [Hide and unhide music, movies, TV shows, audiobooks, and books](#).


Turn on Ask To Buy for children on iPhone


When you set up [Family Sharing](#), the family organizer can require that children in the family group request approval for purchases or free downloads. Purchases can be approved by the organizer or a parent or guardian in the family group.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Family Sharing.
 2. Tap Ask To Buy, then do one of the following:
 - *If there isn't a child in your family group:* Tap Add Child or Create A Child Account, then follow the onscreen instructions.
 - *If there is a child in your family group:* Tap the child's name, then turn on Ask To Buy.
-

Note: Age restrictions for Ask To Buy vary by region. In the United States, the family organizer can turn on Ask To Buy for any family member under age 18; for children under age 13, it's turned on by default.

Set up Apple Cash Family on iPhone

With [Family Sharing](#), the organizer can set up an Apple Cash account for a child in the family group, and use the Wallet app  to see the card balance, monitor transactions, and limit who the child can send money to.


1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Family Sharing.
 2. Tap Apple Cash, then do one of the following:
 - *If there isn't a child in your family group:* Tap Add Child or Create A Child Account, then follow the onscreen instructions.
 - *If there is a child in your family group:* Tap the child's name, tap Set Up Apple Cash, then follow the onscreen instructions.
-

To learn how kids and teens can use Apple Cash Family, see the Apple Support article [Set up and use Apple Cash Family](#).

Share subscriptions and iCloud storage with family members on iPhone

When you're in a [Family Sharing group](#), you can share subscriptions to Apple Arcade, Apple Music, Apple News+, Apple TV+, and Apple TV channels with other family members. You can also share an iCloud storage plan.

Not all services are available in all countries or regions, and some selections are subject to content restrictions set in [Screen Time](#).

-
1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Family Sharing.
 2. Tap a subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See any of the following to learn more.

- *Apple Arcade*: See [Get apps in the App Store on iPhone](#). All members of your family can download and play Apple Arcade games from the App Store. Each player gets a personalized account—your progress is carried over between devices.
- *Apple Music*: See [Subscribe to Apple Music on iPhone](#). Each family member gets their own music library and personal recommendations.
- *Apple News+*: See [Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone](#). All members of your family can read Apple News+ publications for no additional charge.
- *Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels*: See [Set up the Apple TV app on iPhone](#). Each family member can watch on their iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices, using their own Apple ID and password.
- *iCloud storage*: See the Apple Support article [Share an iCloud storage plan with your family](#). Your family can share an iCloud storage plan of 200 GB or more. When you share a storage plan, you simply share the available storage space. Your photos and documents stay private and everyone keeps using their own accounts with iCloud.

You can also share iTunes Store, App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV purchases with family members. See [Download family members' purchases on iPhone](#).

Share photos, a calendar, and more with family members on iPhone

With [Family Sharing](#) on iPhone, you can share a family photo album, a family calendar, your location, and more.

Share photos, calendars, reminders, and files

You can use iCloud to keep your family members connected.

Share any of the following:

- *Photos and videos:* See [Share iPhone photos with Shared Albums in iCloud](#).
 - *Calendars:* See [Share iCloud calendars on iPhone](#).
 - *Reminder list:* See [Share reminders and collaborate on iPhone](#).
 - *Documents and files:* See [Share files and folders in iCloud Drive on iPhone](#).
-

Share your location with family members

With Family Sharing, you can share your location with members of your family group. When the family organizer sets up location sharing in [Family Sharing settings](#), the organizer's location is automatically shared with everyone in the family. Then, family members can choose whether or not to share their location.



When you share your location, your family members can [see your location in Find My](#) and, if your device is lost, they can [help you locate it](#). You can also [get notified when family members change their locations](#)—for example, if a child leaves school during school hours.

Note: To share your location, you must have Location Services turned on in Settings  > Privacy.

1. Go to Settings > [your name] > Family Sharing > Location Sharing, then turn on Share My Location.
2. If your iPhone isn't currently sharing your location, tap Use This iPhone as My Location.
3. Tap the name of a family member you want to share your location with, then tap Share My Location.

You can repeat this step for each family member you want to share your location with. Each family member receives a message that you're sharing your location and can choose to share their location with you.

4. To stop sharing your location with a family member, tap the name of the family member, then tap Stop Sharing My Location.


You can also send or share your location while using the Messages app . Tap your family member's profile picture or name at the top of the conversation, tap , then tap Send My Current Location or Share My Location.

Share a Personal Hotspot

With Family Sharing, you can share an internet connection through a Personal Hotspot with members of your family group. When a member of your family group sets up a Personal Hotspot, other family members can use it without having to enter the password.


See [Share your internet connection from iPhone](#).

Locate a family member's missing device on iPhone

When you're in a [Family Sharing group](#) and family members share their locations with you, you can use the Find My app  on your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Mac, or Find My iPhone on iCloud.com to help another family member find a lost device.

Set up your iPhone to be found by a family member

A family member can help locate your missing iPhone if you do the following on the device *before* it's lost:

- *Turn on Location Services:* Go to Settings  > Privacy, then turn on Location Services.
- *Turn on Find My iPhone:* Go to Settings > [your name] > Find My > Find My iPhone, then turn on Find My iPhone, Find My network, and Send Last Location.

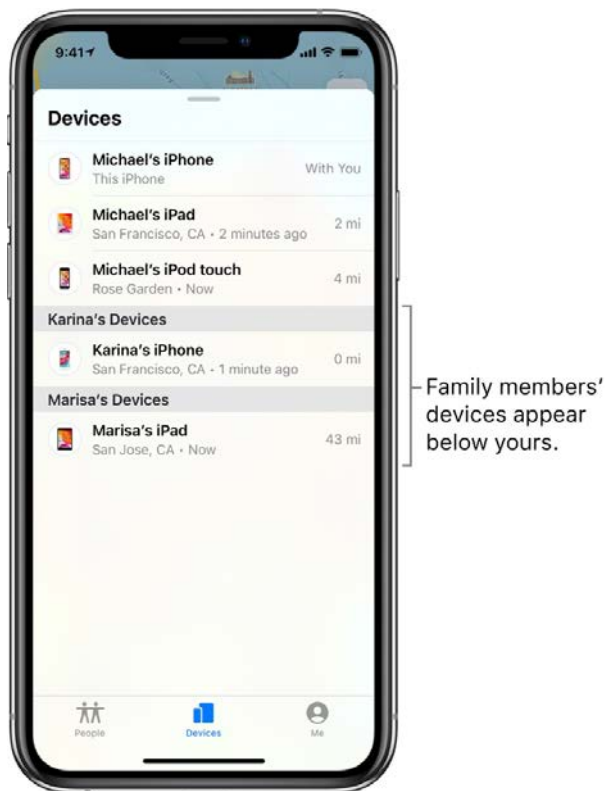
To set up other devices, see [Add a device to Find My on iPhone](#).

- *Share your location with family members:* Go to Settings > [your name] > Family Sharing > Location Sharing, then turn on Share My Location.
-

Locate a family member's device

See [Locate a device in Find My on iPhone](#).


Your devices are at the top of the list, and your family members' devices are below yours.



You can also use [Find My iPhone on iCloud.com](#) to locate a family member's missing device. See [Locate a device in Find My iPhone on iCloud.com](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

Set up Screen Time through Family Sharing on iPhone

You can set up Screen Time for a child in your family group through [Family Sharing](#). This includes downtime, allowances for app use, the contacts your child communicates with, content ratings, and more. Screen Time also lets you and your child see how they're using their devices and use that information to structure their device use. To use Screen Time, your child must be using an eligible device. See the Screen Time section in the Apple Support article [System Requirements for iCloud](#).

-
1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Family Sharing > Screen Time.
 2. Tap the name of a child in your family group, tap Turn On Screen Time, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For information about Screen Time settings, see [Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone](#).

Important: If you set up Screen Time for a child through Family Sharing and you forget the family Screen Time passcode, you can reset it. See the Apple Support article [If you forgot your Screen Time passcode](#).

For information about child accounts in Family Sharing, see the Apple Support article [Family Sharing and Apple ID for your child](#).


Screen Time

View your Screen Time summary on iPhone

Screen Time shows you how you use your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Mac—including which apps and websites you spend time with, how often you pick up your device, and so on. You can use this information to help you make decisions about managing the time you spend on devices. You can set allowances and limits for using certain apps and websites, prevent access to explicit music and web content, and more.

When you set up Screen Time, it begins building a description of your device use, including:

- How much time you spend using apps by category (social networking, entertainment, reading, and so on)
- A breakdown of your app use by time of day
- How long you spend using each app, and which apps you used beyond your time limit
- An overview of the types of notifications you get, and which apps are sending you the most notifications
- How often you pick up your device and which apps you use—that is, how many times each app was the first one used after picking up the device. You can tap each app in your Screen Time summary to see more information about its use.

When Screen Time is [set up](#), you can view your summary in Settings  > Screen Time > See All Activity. You can see a summary of your device use for the current day or the past week.




Set up Screen Time for yourself on iPhone

With Screen Time, you can set allowances and limits for app use, schedule downtime, and more. You can change or turn off any of these settings at any time.


Set downtime

You can block apps and notifications during periods when you want time away from your devices.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
 2. Tap Turn On Screen Time, tap Continue, then tap This is My iPhone.
 3. Tap Downtime, then turn on Downtime.
 4. Select Every Day or Customize Days, then set the start and end times.
-

Set app limits

You can set a time limit for a category of apps (for example, Games or Social Networking) and for individual apps.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. If you haven't already turned on Screen Time, tap Turn On Screen Time, tap Continue, then tap This is My iPhone.
3. Tap App Limits, then tap Add Limit.
4. Select one or more app categories.

To set limits for individual apps, tap the category name to see all the apps in that category, then select the apps you want to limit. If you select multiple categories or apps, the time limit you set applies to all of them.

5. Tap Next, then set the amount of time allowed.



To set an amount of time for each day, tap Customize Days, then set limits for specific days.

6. To set a limit for more apps or categories, tap Choose Apps, then repeat step 5.
7. When you finish setting limits, tap Add to return to the App Limits screen.

To temporarily turn off all app limits, tap App Limits on the App Limits screen. To temporarily turn off a limit for a specific category, tap the category, then tap App Limit. To remove a limit for a category, tap the category, then tap Delete Limit.

Set communication limits

You can block incoming and outgoing communication—including phone calls, FaceTime calls, and messages—from specific contacts in iCloud, either at all times or during certain periods.

1. If you haven't already turned on Contacts in iCloud, go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud, then turn on Contacts.
2. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
3. If you haven't already turned on Screen Time, tap Turn On Screen Time, tap Continue, then tap This is My iPhone.
4. Tap Communication Limits, then do any of the following:
 - *Limit communication at any time:* Tap During Screen Time, then select Contacts Only, Contacts & Groups with at Least One Contact, or Everyone.
 - *Limit communication during downtime:* Tap During Downtime. The option you selected for During Screen Time is already set here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts.

If you select Specific Contacts, then tap either Choose From My Contacts or Add New Contact to select people you want to allow communication with during downtime.




If someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings tries to call you (by phone or FaceTime), or send you a message, their communication won't go through.

If you try to call or send a message to someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings, their name or number appears in red with an hourglass icon, and your communication won't go through. If the limit applies only to downtime, you receive a Time Limit message. You can resume communication with the contact when downtime is over.

To resume communication with contacts who are blocked by your Communication Limit settings, change the settings by following the steps above.


Choose apps you want to allow at all times

You can specify apps that you want to be able to use at any time (for example, in the event of an emergency), even during downtime.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
 2. If you haven't already turned on Screen Time, tap Turn On Screen Time, tap Continue, then tap This is My iPhone.
 3. Tap Always Allowed, then tap  or  next to an app to add or remove it from the Allowed Apps list.
-

Set content and privacy restrictions

You can block inappropriate content and set restrictions for iTunes Store and App Store purchases.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. If you haven't already turned on Screen Time, tap Turn On Screen Time, tap Continue, then tap This is My iPhone.
3. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions, then tap options to set content allowances for iTunes Store and App Store purchases, app use, content ratings, and so on.

Note: To prevent changes to the maximum headphone volume, tap Reduce Loud Sounds, then select Don't Allow. See [Limit the headphone volume](#).


You can also set a passcode that's required before changing settings.

To share your Screen Time settings and reports across all your devices, make sure you're signed in with the same Apple ID and Share Across Devices is turned on.

Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPhone

Screen Time lets you see how family members are using their devices, so you can structure the time they spend on them. You can set up Screen Time for a family member on their device or, if you've set up Family Sharing, you can set up Screen Time for a family member through Family Sharing on your device. See [Set up Screen Time through Family Sharing on iPhone](#) and the Apple Support article [Family Sharing and Apple ID for your child](#).


Set downtime and app limits on a family member's device


1. On your family member's device, go to Settings  > Screen Time.
 2. Tap Turn On Screen Time, tap Continue, then tap This is My Child's iPhone.
 3. To schedule downtime for your family member (time away from the screen), enter the start and end times, then tap Set Downtime.
 4. To set limits for categories of apps you want to manage for your family member (for example, Games or Social Networking), select the categories.

To see all the categories, tap Show All Categories.
 5. Tap Set, enter an amount of time, then tap Set App Limit.
 6. Tap Continue, then enter a Screen Time passcode for managing your family member's Screen Time settings.
-

Set communication limits on a family member's device

You can block incoming and outgoing communication on your family member's device—including phone calls, FaceTime calls, and messages—from specific contacts, either at all times or during certain periods.

1. If you haven't already turned on Contacts in iCloud on your family member's device, go to Settings  > [child's name] > iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

Note: You can only manage your family member's communication if they're using Contacts in iCloud.
2. On your family member's device, go to Settings  > Screen Time.
3. If you haven't already turned on Screen Time, tap Turn On Screen Time, tap Continue, then tap This is My Child's iPhone.

4. Tap Communication Limits, then do any of the following:

- *Limit communication at any time:* Tap During Screen Time, then select Contacts Only, Contacts & Groups with at Least One Contact, or Everyone.
- *Limit communication during downtime:* Tap During Downtime. The option you selected for During Screen Time is already set here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts.

If you select Specific Contacts, then tap either Choose From My Contacts or Add New Contact to select people you want to allow communication with during downtime.

- *Manage a child's contacts:* If you're using Family Sharing, you can view, edit, add, or delete your child's contacts. Tap Manage [child's name] Contacts.

If your child already has contacts in iCloud, they receive a notification on their device asking them to approve the request to manage them. If they don't have contacts, they don't get a notification and you can immediately add contacts.

When you manage your child's contacts, a new row appears beneath Manage [child's name] Contacts to show how many contacts your child has. Tap the row to view and edit the contacts.

- *Allow contact editing:* Tap Allow Contact Editing to turn off this option and prevent your child from editing their contacts.

Turning off contact editing and limiting communication at any time to Contacts Only is a good way to control who your child can communicate with and when they can be contacted.

If someone who's currently blocked by the Communication Limit settings tries to call your family member (by phone or FaceTime), or send them a message, their communication won't go through.



If your family member tries to call or send a message to someone who's currently blocked by the Communication Limit settings, the recipient's name or number appears in red with an hourglass icon, and the communication won't go through. If the limit applies only to downtime, your family member receives a Time Limit message and can resume communication with the contact when downtime is over.

To allow your family member to communicate with contacts who are blocked by the Communication Limit settings, change the settings by following the steps above.

Choose which apps to allow at all times on a family member's device

You can set which apps you want your family member to be able to use at any time.



1. On your family member's device, go to Settings > Screen Time.
2. If you haven't already turned on Screen Time, tap Turn On Screen Time, tap Continue, then tap This is My Child's iPhone.

3. Tap Always Allowed, then tap  or  next to an app to add or remove the app from the list.

Note: If your family member needs health or accessibility apps, make sure they're in the Allowed Apps list. If Messages isn't always allowed, your family member may not be able to send or receive messages (including to emergency numbers and contacts) during downtime or after the app limit has expired.

Set content and privacy restrictions on a family member's device

You can help ensure that the content on your family member's device is age appropriate by limiting the explicitness ratings in Content & Privacy Restrictions.

1. On your family member's device, go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. If you haven't already turned on Screen Time, tap Turn On Screen Time, tap Continue, then tap This is My Child's iPhone.
3. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
4. Choose specific content and privacy options, then tap .

Note: To prevent changes to the maximum headphone volume, tap Reduce Loud Sounds, then select Don't Allow. See [Limit the headphone volume](#).

Add or change Screen Time settings for a family member later


To add or change Screen Time settings for a family member later, follow the steps described in [Set up Screen Time for yourself on iPhone](#).

Important: If you set up Screen Time for a family member on their device (not through Family Sharing), and you forget the Screen Time passcode, you can use your Apple ID to reset it. However, if you set up Screen Time for a family member on your device through Family Sharing and you forget your Screen Time passcode, you can reset it on your device using your device passcode, Touch ID, or Face ID.

Get a report of your device use on iPhone

When you have Screen Time set up, you can get a report of your device use.



1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap See All Activity, then do any of the following:
 - Tap Week to see a summary of your weekly use.
 - Tap Day to see a summary of your daily use.

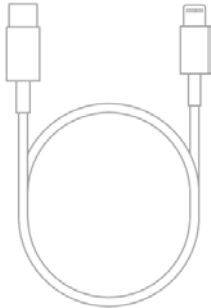
You can also view your summary by tapping a Screen Time Weekly Report notification when it appears on your screen. (If the notification disappears, you can find it in [Notification Center](#). Alternatively, you can add a widget for Screen Time to [Today View](#).)

Accessories for charging iPhone

Charging cables for iPhone

A charging cable is included with iPhone. You can connect iPhone to a power outlet using the included cable and a compatible power adapter. You can also [connect this cable](#) to your computer's USB port for charging and syncing.

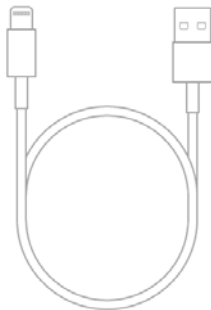
USB-C to Lightning Cable



The USB-C to Lightning Cable is included with the following models:

- iPhone 11 Pro and iPhone 11 Pro Max

Lightning to USB Cable



The Lightning to USB Cable is included with the following models:

- iPhone 11
- iPhone XR, iPhone XS, iPhone XS Max, and iPhone X
- iPhone SE (2nd generation) and iPhone SE (1st generation)
- iPhone 8 and iPhone 8 Plus
- iPhone 7 and iPhone 7 Plus

- iPhone 6s and iPhone 6s Plus

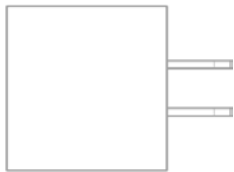
Power adapters for iPhone

You can connect iPhone to a power outlet using its charging cable and a compatible power adapter. All models of iPhone [include a charging cable](#), and many models include a power adapter.

You can also use third-party power adapters that are compliant with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. (See “Charging” in [Important safety information for iPhone](#).)

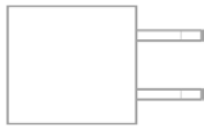
Apple 18W USB-C Power Adapter

This adapter is included with iPhone 11 Pro and iPhone 11 Pro Max.



Apple USB power adapter

The size and type of the adapter depends on your iPhone model and your country or region. The following figure illustrates the Apple 5W USB Power Adapter.



An Apple USB power adapter is included with the following models:

- iPhone 11
- iPhone XR, iPhone XS, iPhone XS Max, and iPhone X
- iPhone SE (2nd generation) and iPhone SE (1st generation)
- iPhone 8 and iPhone 8 Plus
- iPhone 7 and iPhone 7 Plus
- iPhone 6s and iPhone 6s Plus

AirPods and other headphones

Set up AirPods with iPhone

Set up AirPods to listen to music, movies, text messages, and more. You can also use AirPods to make and answer phone calls and FaceTime calls with your iPhone.

Pair AirPods with your iPhone

1. Go to the Home Screen on your iPhone.
2. Open the case with your AirPods inside, then hold it next to your iPhone.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Done.



Your AirPods are automatically paired with all of your supported devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID (iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.12, watchOS 3, or later required).

To unpair AirPods, see [Unpair a Bluetooth device](#).

Note: If you can't pair your AirPods, see the Apple Support article [If your AirPods won't connect](#).

Find the best fit (AirPods Pro)

To see which of the included ear tips provide the best seal, run the fit detection test.

1. Open the AirPods case.
 2. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Bluetooth.
 3. Tap  next to your AirPods in the list of devices.
 4. Tap Ear Tip Fit Test, tap Continue, then follow the onscreen instructions.
-

Charge AirPods

Put them in the case and close the lid.

AirPods shut down and charge whenever they're in the case. You can charge the case by connecting it to a power outlet using an Apple Lightning to USB cable and an Apple USB power adapter. If you have the Wireless Charging Case, you can charge the case wirelessly with a Qi-certified charger.

See the Apple Support article [Charge your AirPods with charging case and learn about battery life](#).

Note: With supported Apple and Beats headphones, you can tune the audio for your hearing needs. See [Set headphone accommodations](#).

Control audio playback on AirPods with iPhone

Use AirPods to hear, pause, and skip the audio playing on your iPhone.

Hear what's playing on your iPhone

Put one or both AirPods in your ears.

Stop the audio

Remove both AirPods from your ears, or if you're wearing just one, remove it.

If you return one to your ear within 15 seconds, play resumes automatically.

Pause the audio

- *All models:* While listening with both AirPods, remove one. When you return it to your ear, playback resumes automatically.
- *AirPods Pro:* Press the Force Sensor on either of your AirPods. To resume playback, press again.



Note: If you press the Force Sensor for too long, a chime sounds, and the noise control mode changes. Press and hold the Force Sensor to return to the mode you want, then try to pause or resume the playback again.

- *AirPods:* (2nd generation) Double-tap either of your AirPods. To resume play, double-tap it again.
 - *AirPods:* (1st generation) You can set either of your AirPods to pause when you double-tap it, then resume play when you double-tap it again. See [Adjust AirPods settings with iPhone](#).
-

Skip tracks

- *AirPods Pro:* To skip forward, double-press the Force Sensor on either of your AirPods. To skip back, triple-press the sensor.
- *AirPods:* (2nd generation) To skip forward, double-tap either of your AirPods. You can set either of them to skip back when you double-tap it. See [Adjust AirPods settings with iPhone](#).

- *AirPods*: (1st generation) You can set either of your AirPods to skip forward or back when you double-tap it. See [Adjust AirPods settings with iPhone](#).

For more information about AirPods, including how to clean them and how to use them with Macs and other Bluetooth devices, see the [AirPods support website](#).

Change the volume on AirPods with iPhone

Use iPhone to control the volume on your AirPods.

Change the volume

Do one of the following:

- [Summon Siri](#), then say something like “Turn down the volume.”
 - Use either volume button on the side of iPhone.
 - Drag the volume slider in an app’s playback controls.
 - Open Control Center, then drag the volume slider.
 - Drag the volume slider on the Lock Screen.
-

Monitor or limit the volume

You can use the Health app and the Hearing control in Control Center to monitor the audio levels from your AirPods. See [Track audio and sound level exposure in Health on iPhone](#) and [Check headphone and environmental sound levels in Control Center on iPhone](#).

You can also limit the maximum volume for your AirPods. See [Limit the headphone volume](#).

Make and answer calls with AirPods on iPhone

You can make and answer phone calls and FaceTime calls with AirPods that are paired with your iPhone.

Make calls with AirPods

While wearing AirPods, do the following:

- *AirPods*: (AirPods Pro and 2nd generation) Say “Hey Siri,” then say something like “Call Eliza’s mobile” or “Make a FaceTime call.” (You can also set either of your AirPods to summon Siri with your touch. See [Adjust AirPods settings with iPhone](#).)

- *AirPods*: (1st generation) Double-tap either of your AirPods to summon Siri, wait for a chime, then make your request. (By default, a double tap summons Siri, but you can change this behavior in Settings. See [Adjust AirPods settings with iPhone.](#))

See [Use Siri with AirPods on iPhone.](#)

Answer calls with AirPods

Do the following to answer a call; do the same to hang up or switch calls:


- *AirPods Pro*: Press the Force Sensor on either of your AirPods.
 - *AirPods*: (2nd generation) Tap either of your AirPods.
 - *AirPods*: (1st generation) Double-tap either of your AirPods.
-

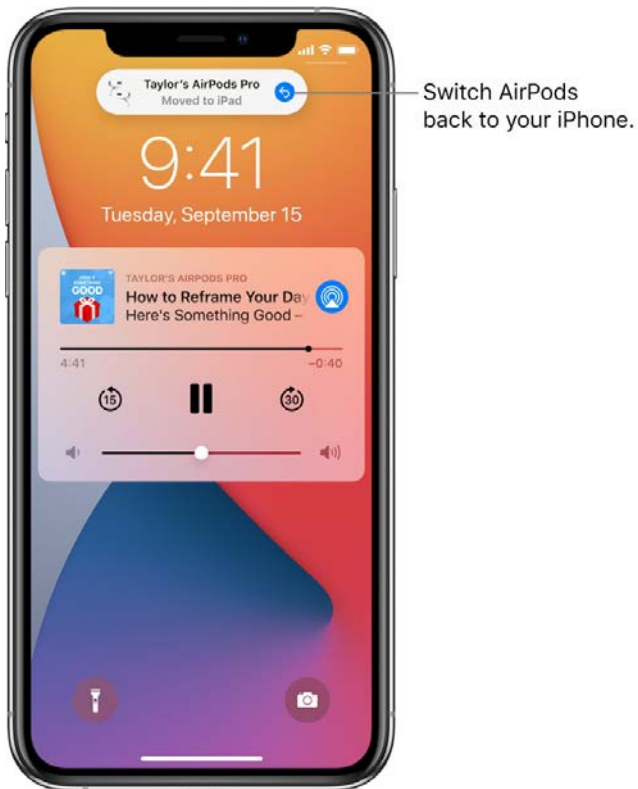
Switch AirPods automatically between iPhone and other devices



When your other devices are signed in with the same Apple ID as your iPhone, AirPods automatically switch between your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Mac.

For example, if you're listening to another device with your AirPods but you want to listen to your iPhone instead, start playing music, a podcast, or other audio on your iPhone. Your AirPods switch to iPhone automatically. Your AirPods also switch to iPhone when you make or answer a call on iPhone.

Switch AirPods back to your iPhone

If your AirPods automatically switch from your iPhone to another device but you want them to stay connected to your iPhone, tap  (in the "Moved to" notice at the top of the iPhone screen).



To turn off automatic switching, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, tap  next to the name of your AirPods, tap Connect to This iPhone, then tap When Last Connected to This iPhone.

Note: Automatic switching works on supported models of AirPods and Beats products and requires iOS 14, iPadOS 14, macOS Big Sur, or later.


Use Siri with AirPods on iPhone

You can use Siri with your AirPods to [ask questions and do tasks](#).

Summon Siri with your voice (AirPods Pro and AirPods 2nd generation)



While wearing one or both AirPods, say “Hey Siri,” then ask Siri a question or to do a task for you.

For example, say something like “Hey Siri, how’s the weather today?” or “Hey Siri, let’s hear the Acoustic playlist.”

Note: If you didn’t set up “Hey Siri,” go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then turn on Listen for “Hey Siri.”

Summon Siri with your touch

You can set AirPods Pro to summon Siri when you press and hold the Force Sensor, and you can set your AirPods (2nd generation) to summon Siri when you double-tap one of your AirPods. By default, a double tap summons Siri on AirPods (1st generation), but you can change this behavior.

1. Open the AirPods case.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Bluetooth.
3. Tap  next to your AirPods in the list of devices.
4. Select Left or Right, then choose Siri. (Or to change the default behavior of AirPods (1st generation), choose a different option.)

Note: If you haven't turned on Siri, go to Settings > Siri & Search, then turn on Press Side Button for Siri (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Press Home for Siri (on an iPhone with a Home button).


Listen and respond to messages (AirPods Pro and AirPods 2nd generation)

With Announce Messages, you can hear your messages over your AirPods. When your iPhone is locked, your AirPods are connected to it, and a message arrives, a chime sounds and Siri begins to read the message.

To stop Siri from reading, you can do any of the following:

- Remove one of your AirPods.
- Say something like "Stop" or "Cancel."
- Press the Force Sensor on either of your AirPods Pro, or double-tap either of your AirPods (2nd generation).

To reply to the message, say something like "Reply that's great news."

Siri repeats what you said, then asks for confirmation before sending your reply. To send replies without waiting for confirmation, go to Settings  > Siri & Search > Announce Messages, then turn on Reply without Confirmation.

Note: If you didn't turn on Announce Messages when you set up your AirPods, go to Settings > Siri & Search > Announce Messages, then turn on Announce Messages with Siri.

Share audio with AirPods and Beats products from iPhone

While you wear AirPods or compatible Beats earphones or headphones, you can share what you're listening to with a friend who's also wearing AirPods or a compatible Beats product. Both sets of audio devices must be paired with iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch. (On supported models; iOS 13.1, iPadOS 13.1, or later required.)

Start sharing audio when your friend's AirPods or Beats earphones are in the charging case

Your AirPods or Beats product should be connected to your iPhone, and your friend's AirPods or Beats earphones should be inside their case.

1. While you're wearing your AirPods or a Beats product, move your iPhone close to your friend's open charging case.
2. On your iPhone, tap Temporarily Share Audio.



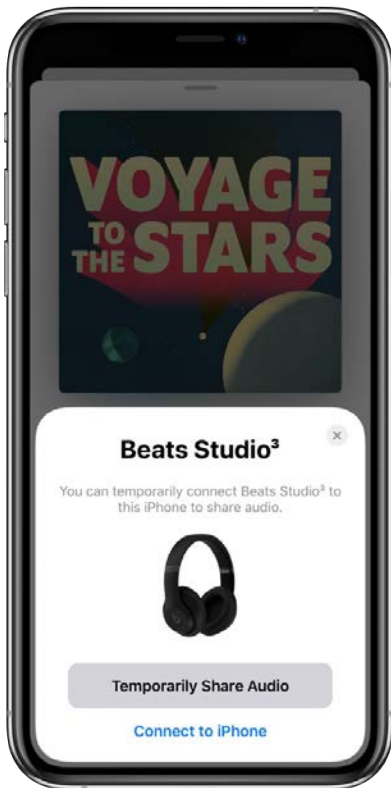
3. Follow the onscreen instructions, then your friend can remove the AirPods or Beats earphones from their case.

Share audio with your friend's Beats headphones

Your AirPods or a Beats product should be connected to your iPhone, and your friend's Beats headphones should be turned on.


1. Ask your friend to briefly press (for less than 1 second) the power button on their headphones.
2. While you're wearing your AirPods or a Beats product, move your iPhone close to your friend's headphones.


3. On your iPhone, tap Temporarily Share Audio, then follow the onscreen instructions.



Share audio when your friend is wearing AirPods or a Beats product

If your friend is wearing AirPods or a Beats product connected to their iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch, you can share the audio that's playing on your iPhone.

1. Wear your AirPods or a Beats product.
2. On your iPhone, tap  in the Now Playing controls, either in the app you're listening to or on the Lock Screen.

Or open Control Center, touch and hold the Now Playing controls at the top right, then tap .
3. Tap Share Audio (below the name of your earphones or headphones).
4. Bring your iPhone close to your friend's iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch.
5. Tap Share Audio on your iPhone.
6. Ask your friend to tap Join on their device.


Control the volume of each set of devices

If you and a friend use AirPods or a Beats product to share audio from your iPhone, you can set a different volume level for each device.

1. On your iPhone, open Control Center, then touch and hold the volume control.
2. Drag the separate volume sliders.




Stop sharing audio

On your iPhone, tap  on the Now Playing screen, on the Lock Screen, or in Control Center, then tap the name of your friend's AirPods or Beats product to turn off the connection.



Change noise control modes on AirPods Pro with iPhone

Switch between noise cancellation and transparency modes while listening to AirPods Pro from your iPhone.



 **Tip:** To quickly change modes, press and hold the Force Sensor on either of your AirPods Pro until you hear a chime. (In Settings, you can choose which modes are available. See [Adjust AirPods settings with iPhone.](#))

-
1. Open Control Center, then press and hold the volume control.
 2. Tap the Noise Control button at the bottom left.
 3. Choose one of these settings:
 - *Noise Cancellation:* Blocks out external sounds.
 - *Transparency:* Lets you hear the sounds around you.
 - *Off:* Turns off both noise cancellation and transparency.
-

Control spatial audio on AirPods Pro with iPhone

When you watch a supported show or movie, AirPods Pro use spatial audio with dynamic head tracking to create an immersive surround sound experience. You hear the surround sound channels in the right place, even as you turn your head or move your iPhone.



Learn how spatial audio works

1. Place both AirPods Pro in your ears, then go to Settings  > Bluetooth.
 2. Tap  next to your AirPods Pro, then tap See & Hear How It Works.
-

Turn spatial audio on or off while watching a show or movie

Open Control Center, press and hold the volume control, then tap Spatial Audio at the lower right.



Turn spatial audio off or on for all shows and movies

1. Go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then tap  next to your AirPods in the list of devices.
 2. Turn Spatial Audio on or off.
-

Note: By default, spatial audio makes it sound like the audio is coming from your iPhone, even when your head moves. You can change this behavior so that the audio sounds like it's following your head movement. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Headphones, tap the name of your headphones, then turn Follow iPhone off.

Adjust AirPods settings with iPhone

You can change various settings, including the name of your AirPods and how each of them responds when you press or tap it.

1. Open the AirPods case.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Bluetooth.
3. Tap  next to your AirPods in the list of devices.

4. Do any of the following:

- *Change the name of your AirPods:* Tap the current name, enter a new name, then tap Done.
- *Change what happens when you press and hold the Force Sensor:* (AirPods Pro) Select Left or Right, then choose whether to summon Siri or change the noise control mode. To select which modes to use, tap a mode to turn it on or off.
- *Change what a double tap does:* (AirPods 1st and 2nd generation) Select Left or Right, then choose an option.
- *Turn Automatic Ear Detection off or on:* Tap Automatic Ear Detection.

When Automatic Ear Detection is turned on, AirPods sense when they're in your ears and automatically play the audio from your iPhone. Playback is paused when you remove one of your AirPods. When you remove both, playback stops. When you have Automatic Ear Detection on and you're not wearing your AirPods, audio plays through the iPhone speakers.

When Automatic Ear Detection is turned off, all audio from your iPhone plays to your AirPods even when you're not wearing them.

- *Set Microphone to left, right, or automatic:* Tap Microphone, then choose an option.

When Microphone is set to Automatic, either of your AirPods can act as the microphone. If you use only one of them, it acts as the microphone.

When you choose Always Left or Always Right, the one you choose becomes the microphone even if you remove it from your ear or put it in the case.

Note: With supported Apple and Beats headphones, you can tune the audio for your hearing needs. See [Set headphone accommodations](#).

Set up and listen to Bluetooth devices on iPhone


Using a Bluetooth connection, you can listen to iPhone on wireless headphones, speakers, car kits, and more.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding hearing loss and avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information for iPhone](#).

Pair a Bluetooth device

1. Follow the instructions that came with the device to put it in discovery mode.


Note: To pair AirPods, see [Set up AirPods with iPhone](#).

2. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then tap the name of the device.


iPhone must be within about 33 feet (10 meters) of the Bluetooth device.

Bypass your Bluetooth device for calls

To use the iPhone receiver or speaker for calls, do any of the following:

- Answer a call by tapping the iPhone screen.
 - During a call, tap Audio, then choose iPhone or Speaker Phone.
 - Turn off the Bluetooth device, unpair it, or move out of range.
 - Go to Settings , tap Bluetooth, then turn off Bluetooth.
-



Play audio from iPhone on a Bluetooth audio device

1. On your iPhone, open an audio app, such as Music, then choose an item to play.
2. Tap , then choose your Bluetooth device.

While audio is playing, you can change the playback destination from the Lock Screen or Control Center.

The playback destination returns to iPhone if you move the device out of Bluetooth range.


Unpair a Bluetooth device

Go to Settings  > Bluetooth, tap  next to the name of the device, then tap Forget This Device.

If you don't see the Devices list, make sure Bluetooth is on.

If you have AirPods and you tap Forget This Device, they're automatically removed from other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Disconnect from Bluetooth devices

To quickly disconnect from all Bluetooth devices without turning Bluetooth off, open Control Center, then tap .

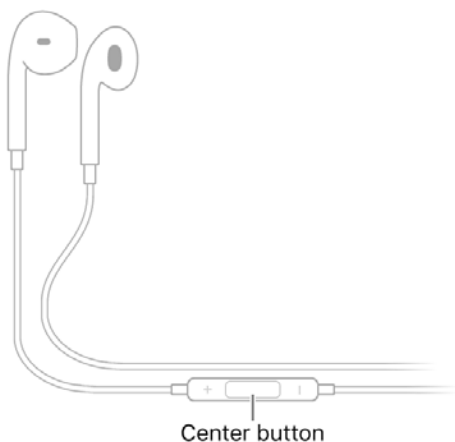
To learn about Bluetooth privacy settings on iPhone, see the Apple Support article [If an app would like to use Bluetooth on your device](#). If you have trouble connecting a Bluetooth device, see the Apple Support article [If you can't connect a Bluetooth accessory to your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).

Note: The use of certain accessories with iPhone may affect wireless performance. Not all iOS accessories are fully compatible with iPhone. Turning on airplane mode may eliminate audio interference between iPhone and an accessory. Reorienting or relocating iPhone and the connected accessory may improve wireless performance.

Use EarPods with Lightning Connector on iPhone

You can use EarPods with Lightning Connector to listen to music and videos and to make calls on iPhone. EarPods feature a microphone, volume buttons, and the center button.

Use the center button to answer and end calls, control audio and video playback, and use Siri, even when iPhone is locked.



Note: EarPods with Lightning Connector are included with iPhone 7 through iPhone 11 Pro Max, including iPhone SE (2nd generation). For other models, EarPods with Lightning Connector are available separately.

Control audio with your EarPods

- *Pause a song or video:* Press the center button. Press again to resume playback.
 - *Skip to the next song:* Press the center button twice quickly.
 - *Return to the beginning of the song or to the previous song:* To return to the beginning of the song, press the center button three times quickly. To return to the previous song, again press the center button three times quickly.
 - *Fast-forward:* Press the center button twice quickly and hold.
-

Manage calls using your EarPods

- *Answer an incoming call:* Press the center button.
 - *End the current call:* Press the center button.
 - *Switch to an incoming or on-hold call, and put the current call on hold:* Press the center button. Press again to switch back to the first call.
-

Ask Siri with your EarPods

Press and hold the center button until you hear a beep. Let go, then ask Siri to perform a task or answer your question. See [Ask Siri on iPhone](#).

Note: You can use Health on iPhone to monitor the audio levels from your EarPods. See [Track audio and sound level exposure in Health on iPhone](#).


Check headphone and environmental sound levels in Control Center on iPhone

While using earphones or headphones with iPhone, you can use Hearing in Control Center to check your headphone audio level and the sound level of your environment.

EarPods, AirPods, and many other wired and wireless audio devices are compatible with Hearing in Control Center.

1. Add Hearing to Control Center.

See [Add and organize controls](#).

2. Connect and wear your earphones or headphones.
3. Open Control Center, then tap .
4. To see the environmental sound level displayed in decibels, tap Live Listen to turn it on. (To turn it off, tap again.)

5. To see the audio level of your earphones or headphones, play audio on your iPhone.





Note: When you listen through headphones to audio playing on iPhone, the Headphone Level meter displays the sound level of the headphones, not the environment, even when Live Listen is turned on. The dots below the Headphone Level meter continue to indicate the sound level of the environment when Live Listen is turned on.

6. To see the Live Listen meter or to turn off Live Listen while using apps, tap the red recording indicator at the top of the screen.

Note: You can use Live Listen to [stream sound from the microphone](#) on iPhone to your AirPods. This can help you hear better in some situations—for example, when having a conversation in a noisy environment.

The data from headphone use and Live Listen appears in Health on the Headphone Audio Levels chart. See [Track audio and sound level exposure in Health on iPhone](#).

 **Tip:** After you add Hearing to Control Center, you can open Control Center to view a small version of the sound meter on  without tapping it.

Accessories

Pair iPhone with Apple Watch



On your iPhone, tap the Apple Watch app , then follow the onscreen instructions.

Apple TV, smart TVs, and video displays

Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPhone

You can wirelessly stream video or photos to Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV.

Play video on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

While playing video in the Apple TV app  or another supported video app, tap the screen to show the controls, tap , then choose your Apple TV or AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.





Play the movie on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV.

The LEGO Movie 2: The Second Part is available on the Apple TV app [↗](#)

If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

Show photos on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

In Photos , tap a photo, tap , swipe up, tap AirPlay, then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

Mirror your iPhone on Apple TV or a smart TV

On Apple TV or a smart TV, you can show whatever appears on your iPhone.

1. Open Control Center.
2. Tap Screen Mirroring, then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPhone.

To switch back to iPhone, tap Stop Mirroring or , then choose your iPhone.

You can also stream audio, such as music or a podcast, from iPhone to your Apple TV or smart TV speakers. See [Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers](#).

Note: For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the [Home accessories website](#).

To learn more about using Apple TV, see the [Apple TV User Guide](#).

The LEGO Movie 2: The Second Part © 2019 Warner Bros. Entertainment Inc. LEGO, the LEGO logo, the minifigure, and the brick and knob configuration are trademarks of The LEGO Group. © 2019 The LEGO Group. All rights reserved.

Connect iPhone to a TV, projector, or monitor with a cable

With the appropriate cable or adapter, you can connect your iPhone to a display, like a TV, projector, or computer monitor.

-
1. Plug a Lightning Digital AV Adapter or Lightning to VGA Adapter into the charging port on the bottom of iPhone.
 2. Connect an HDMI or VGA cable to your adapter.
 3. Connect the other end of your HDMI or VGA cable to your secondary display (TV, monitor, or projector).
 4. If necessary, switch to the correct video source on your secondary display. If you need help, use your display's manual.


The adapters have an extra port so you can connect your charging cable and charge your iPhone while connected to a secondary display.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [About Apple Digital AV Adapters for iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers



You can play audio from iPhone on wireless devices like HomePod, Apple TV, AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, and Bluetooth headphones and speakers.

Play audio from iPhone on a wireless device

1. On your iPhone, open an audio app, such as Music, then choose an item to play.
2. Tap , then choose a playback destination.




Note: If your AirPlay 2-enabled devices don't appear in the list of playback destinations, make sure they're on the same Wi-Fi network. With a Bluetooth device, the playback destination returns to iPhone if you move the device out of Bluetooth range.

While audio is playing, you can change the playback destination from the Lock Screen or Control Center. From the Lock Screen, tap . From Control Center, touch and hold the Now Playing controls, then tap .

Note: For information about setting up a Bluetooth audio device, see [Pair a Bluetooth device](#).

Play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices




With AirPlay 2 and iPhone, you can play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices connected to the same Wi-Fi network. For example, you can play a party playlist on HomePod speakers in the living room and kitchen, on an Apple TV in the bedroom, and on an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV in the den.

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like:

- “Stop playing music everywhere”
- “Set the dining room volume to 10 percent”
- “What’s playing in the kitchen?”
- “Play a song I like in the kitchen”
- “Add the living room speaker”
- “Remove the music from the kitchen”
- “Move the music to the den”

You can also choose playback destinations from the iPhone screen.

1. Do one of the following:

- *In an audio app such as Music or Podcasts:* Tap Now Playing at the bottom of the screen, then tap .
- *From Control Center:* Touch and hold the Now Playing controls, then tap .
- *From the Lock Screen:* Tap .


2. Select each device you want to use.

Note: Devices arranged in a stereo pair are treated as a single audio device.

Hand off audio from iPhone to HomePod

While playing audio from Music, Podcasts, or another audio app, bring iPhone close to the top of HomePod.

Audio hand off has the following requirements:

- iPhone and HomePod must be in the same HomeKit home and on the same Wi-Fi network.
- You must be signed in with the same Apple ID on both devices.
- Your devices must have Bluetooth turned on in Settings  and be within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).

To disable Handoff between iPhone and HomePod and other devices, go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Handoff.

Note: To learn more about using HomePod speakers and Apple TV, see the [HomePod User Guide](#) and [Apple TV User Guide](#).


For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the [Home accessories website](#).


Use Magic Keyboard with iPhone

You can use Magic Keyboard, including Magic Keyboard with Numeric Keypad, to enter text on iPhone. Magic Keyboard connects to iPhone using Bluetooth and is powered by a built-in rechargeable battery. (Magic Keyboard is available separately.)

Note: For compatibility information about Apple Wireless Keyboard and third-party Bluetooth keyboards, see the Apple Support article [Apple Wireless Keyboard and Magic Keyboard compatibility with iOS devices](#).

Pair Magic Keyboard to iPhone

1. Make sure the keyboard is turned on and charged.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.
3. Select the device when it appears in the Other Devices list.

Note: If Magic Keyboard is already paired with another device, you must unpair them before you can connect Magic Keyboard to your iPhone. For iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch, see [Unpair a Bluetooth device](#). On Mac, choose Apple menu  > System Preferences > Bluetooth, select the device, then Control-click its name.

Reconnect Magic Keyboard to iPhone



Magic Keyboard disconnects when you turn its switch to Off or when you move it or iPhone out of Bluetooth range—about 33 feet (10 meters).

To reconnect, turn the keyboard switch to On, or bring the keyboard and iPhone back into range, then tap any key.

When Magic Keyboard is reconnected, the onscreen keyboard doesn't appear.

Switch to the onscreen keyboard

You need to use the onscreen keyboard instead of an external keyboard to do things like type accented characters or use dictation.

To show the onscreen keyboard, press  on the external keyboard. To hide the onscreen keyboard, press  again.

Switch between language and emoji keyboards

1. On Magic Keyboard, press and hold the Control key.
 2. Press the Space bar to cycle between English, emoji, and [any keyboards you added for typing in different languages](#).
-

Open Search using Magic Keyboard

Press Command-Space.

Change typing options for Magic Keyboard

You can change how iPhone automatically responds to your typing on an external keyboard.

Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then do any of the following:

- *Assign an alternative keyboard layout:* Tap a language at the top of the screen, then choose an alternative layout from the list. (An alternative keyboard layout that doesn't match the keys on your external keyboard.)
 - *Turn Auto-Capitalization on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature capitalizes proper nouns and the first words in sentences as you type.
 - *Turn Auto-Correction on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature corrects the spelling as you type.
 - *Turn "." Shortcut on or off:* When this option is selected, double-tapping the space bar inserts a period followed by a space.
 - *Change the action performed by the Command key or other modifier key:* Tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.
-

Print from iPhone

Use AirPrint to print wirelessly to an AirPrint-enabled printer from apps such as Mail, Photos, and Safari. Many apps available on the App Store also support AirPrint.

iPhone and the printer must be on the same Wi-Fi network. See the Apple Support article [About AirPrint](#).




See the status of a print job

Open the App Switcher, then tap Print Center.

The badge on the icon shows how many documents are in the queue.

To cancel a print job, select it in Print Center, then tap Cancel Printing.

Print a document

Tap , , or  (depending on the app you're using), then tap Print. (Swipe up if you don't see Print.)

Use iPhone with iPad, iPod touch, Mac, and PC

Share your internet connection from iPhone

You can use Personal Hotspot to share a cellular internet connection from your iPhone to other devices. Personal Hotspot is useful when the other devices don't have internet access from a Wi-Fi network. Instant Hotspot allows you to connect your devices to Personal Hotspot without entering a password.

If a nearby iPhone or iPad (Wi-Fi + Cellular models) is sharing its Personal Hotspot, you can use its cellular internet connection on your iPhone. See [Join a Personal Hotspot](#).

Note: Personal Hotspot is not available with all carriers. Additional fees may apply. The number of devices that can join your Personal Hotspot at one time depends on your carrier and iPhone model. Contact your carrier for more information.

Set up Personal Hotspot on iPhone

Go to Settings  > Cellular > Personal Hotspot, then turn on Allow Others to Join.


Note: If you don't see the option for Personal Hotspot, and Cellular Data is turned on in Settings > Cellular, contact your carrier about adding Personal Hotspot to your plan.

You can change the following settings:

- *Change the Wi-Fi password for your Personal Hotspot:* Go to Settings > Cellular > Personal Hotspot > Wi-Fi Password.
- *Change the name of your Personal Hotspot:* Go to Settings > General > About > Name.
- *Turn off Personal Hotspot and disconnect devices:* Go to Settings > Cellular > Personal Hotspot, then turn off Allow Others to Join.

On models with Dual SIM, Personal Hotspot uses the line selected for cellular data.

Connect iPad, iPod touch, or another iPhone to your Personal Hotspot


On the other device, go to Settings  > Wi-Fi, then choose your iPhone from the list of available networks.

If asked for a password on the other device, enter the password shown in Settings > Cellular > Personal Hotspot on your iPhone.

If your iPhone and the other device are set up as follows, then Instant Hotspot connects the devices without requiring a password:


- You're signed in with the same Apple ID on each device.

- Each device has Bluetooth turned on.
- Each device has Wi-Fi turned on.



When a device is connected, a blue band appears at the top of your iPhone screen. The Personal Hotspot icon  appears in the status bar of the connected device.


Connect a Mac or PC to your Personal Hotspot

Do one of the following:

- *Connect your Mac with Wi-Fi and Instant Hotspot:* On your Mac, use the Wi-Fi status menu  in the menu bar to choose your iPhone from the list of available networks.

You must be signed in with the same Apple ID on your Mac and iPhone, have Bluetooth turned on, and have Wi-Fi turned on.

The Wi-Fi status icon  in the menu bar changes to the Personal Hotspot icon  as long as your Mac remains connected to your Personal Hotspot.

- *Connect a Mac or PC with Bluetooth:* To make sure your iPhone is discoverable, go to Settings  > Bluetooth and leave the screen showing. Then on your Mac or PC, follow the manufacturer directions to set up a Bluetooth network connection.
- *Connect a Mac or PC with USB:* [Connect iPhone and your computer using USB](#). If you see an alert that says Trust this Computer?, tap Trust. In your computer's Network preferences, choose iPhone, then configure the network settings.

With Family Sharing, you can share your Personal Hotspot with any member of your family automatically or after they ask for approval. See [Set up Family Sharing on iPhone](#).

When you share a Personal Hotspot from your iPhone, it uses cellular data for the internet connection. To monitor your cellular data network usage, go to Settings > Cellular > Usage. See [View or change cellular settings on iPhone](#).

If you need more help using Personal Hotspot, see the Apple Support article [If Personal Hotspot is not working](#).

Allow phone calls on your iPad, iPod touch, and Mac


You can make and receive phone calls on your iPad, iPod touch, and Mac by relaying calls through your iPhone.

To make calls this way, you must [set up FaceTime](#) and sign in with the same Apple ID on all your devices. (iOS 9, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.10, or later required.)

Note: Wi-Fi Calling on other devices is available with some carriers, and cellular charges may apply.

You must first set up your iPhone, and then set up your other devices.

Allow phone calls on your other devices from iPhone

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > Cellular.
2. If your iPhone has Dual SIM, choose a line (below Cellular Plans).
3. Do any of the following:
 - Tap Calls on Other Devices, turn on Allow Calls on Other Devices, then choose the devices on which you'd like to make and receive calls.

This allows other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID to make and receive calls when they're nearby your iPhone and connected to Wi-Fi.


- Tap Wi-Fi Calling, then turn on Add Wi-Fi Calling For Other Devices.

This allows other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID to make and receive calls even when your iPhone isn't nearby.

4. On your other devices, [set up FaceTime](#) and sign in with the same Apple ID that you use on your iPhone.
5. Turn on Wi-Fi calling:
 - *On your iPad or iPod touch:* Go to Settings > FaceTime, then turn on FaceTime and Calls from iPhone. If you're asked, turn on Wi-Fi calling.
 - *On your Mac:* Open FaceTime, then choose FaceTime > Preferences > Settings. Select "Calls from iPhone." If an Upgrade to Wi-Fi Calling button appears, click it, then follow the instructions.

Note: If you enable Wi-Fi Calling, emergency calls may be made over Wi-Fi, and your device's location information may be used for emergency calls to aid response efforts, regardless of whether you enable Location Services. Some carriers may use the address you registered with the carrier when signing up for Wi-Fi Calling as your location.

Make or receive a phone call on your iPad, iPod touch, or Mac


- *Make a call:* Tap or click a phone number in Contacts, Calendar, FaceTime, Messages, Spotlight, or Safari. Or open FaceTime, enter a contact or phone number, then tap .

Note: If you make a call from another device by relaying it through your iPhone with Dual SIM, the call is made using your default voice line.

- *Receive a call:* Swipe, tap, or click the notification to answer or ignore the call.

For more information about Wi-Fi calls, see the Apple Support article [Make a call with Wi-Fi Calling](#).


Hand off tasks between iPhone and your Mac

Continue working on one device where you left off on another. You can use Handoff with many Apple apps—for example, Mail, Safari, Pages, Numbers, Keynote, Maps, Messages, Reminders, Calendar, and Contacts—and even some third-party apps. To use Handoff, you must be signed in with the same Apple ID on all your devices. Your devices must have Bluetooth turned on in Settings  and be within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).

Switch devices


- *From Mac to iPhone:* Open the App Switcher on iPhone. The icon of the app you're using appears at the bottom of the screen. Tap the icon to continue working in the app.
 - *From iPhone to Mac:* The icon of the app you're using appears on your Mac at the left end of the Dock (or the top, depending on the Dock position). Click the icon to continue working in the app.
-

Disable Handoff on your devices

- *iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch:* Go to Settings , then tap General > AirPlay & Handoff.
 - *Mac:* Choose Apple Menu > System Preferences > General, then turn off "Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices."
-

Cut, copy, and paste between iPhone and your Mac

You can cut or copy content (a block of text or an image, for example) on your iPhone, then paste it on another iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or a Mac computer, and vice versa.

For Universal Clipboard to work, you must be signed in with the same Apple ID on all your devices. Your devices must be connected to Wi-Fi, be within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters), have Bluetooth turned on in Settings , and have [Handoff enabled](#). (iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.12, or later required.)

You must cut, copy, and paste your content within a short period of time.

Copy, cut, or paste

- *Copy:* Pinch closed with three fingers.
- *Cut:* Pinch closed with three fingers two times.
- *Paste:* Pinch open with three fingers.

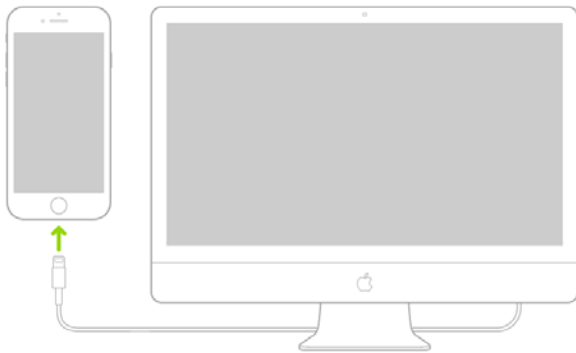
You can also touch and hold a selection, then tap Cut, Copy, or Paste.

For more information about selecting text or placing the insertion point, see [Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPhone](#).

Connect iPhone and your computer using USB

Using USB, you can directly connect iPhone and a Mac or Windows PC to [set up iPhone](#), [charge the iPhone battery](#), [share your iPhone internet connection](#), [transfer files](#), and [sync content](#).

1. Make sure you have one of the following:
 - Mac with a USB port and OS X 10.9 or later
 - PC with a USB port and Windows 7 or later
2. Connect iPhone to your computer using the included Lightning to USB Cable or USB-C to Lightning Cable (iPhone 11 Pro or iPhone 11 Pro Max). If the included cable doesn't connect to your computer, do one of the following:
 - If your iPhone uses the Lightning to USB Cable and your computer has a USB-C port, use a USB-C to Lightning Cable or USB-C to USB Adapter (sold separately).
 - If your iPhone uses the USB-C to Lightning Cable and your computer has a USB port, use a Lightning to USB Cable (sold separately).



Sync iPhone with your computer

You can [use iCloud](#) to automatically keep your photos, files, calendar, and more updated across all your devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID. (You can even use a Windows PC to access your iCloud data on [iCloud.com](#).) Other services like [Apple Music](#) allow you to access additional content across all of your devices. With iCloud and services like Apple Music, no syncing is required.

If you don't want to use iCloud or other services, you can connect iPhone to your Mac or Windows PC to sync the following items:

- Albums, songs, playlists, movies, TV shows, podcasts, books, and audiobooks
- Photos and videos
- Contacts and calendars

With syncing, you can keep these items up to date between your computer and your iPhone.

Note: If you use iCloud or other services like Apple Music, options for syncing with your computer might not be available.

Set up syncing between your Mac and iPhone

1. [Connect iPhone and your computer using USB.](#)
2. In the Finder sidebar on your Mac, select your iPhone.

Note: To use the Finder to sync content, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, [use iTunes](#) to sync with your Mac.

3. At the top of the window, click the type of content you want to sync (for example, Movies or Books).

Note: For information about using the Files option, see [Transfer files between iPhone and your computer.](#)

4. Select "Sync [content type] onto [device name]."

By default, all items of a content type are synced, but you can choose to sync individual items, such as selected music, movies, books, or calendars.

5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 for each type of content you want to sync, then click Apply.

Your Mac syncs to your iPhone whenever you connect them.

To view or change syncing options, select your iPhone in the Finder sidebar, then choose from the options at the top of the window.

Before disconnecting your iPhone from your Mac, click the Eject button in the Finder sidebar.

See [Sync content between your Mac and iPhone or iPad](#) in the macOS User Guide.

Set up syncing between your Windows PC and iPhone

1. [Connect iPhone and your computer using USB.](#)
2. In the iTunes app on your PC, click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window.

3. Select the type of content you want to sync (for example, Movies or Books) in the sidebar on the left.

Note: For information about using the File Sharing option, see [Transfer files between iPhone and your computer](#).

4. Select Sync to turn on syncing for that type of item.

By default, all items of a content type are synced, but you can choose to sync individual items, such as selected music, movies, books, or calendars.

5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 for each type of content you want to include on your iPhone, then click Apply.

By default, your Windows PC syncs to your iPhone whenever you connect them. You can have iTunes ask you before syncing, and if there are some items you never want sync, you can keep them from being synced. See [Sync iTunes content on PC with your devices](#) in the iTunes User Guide for Windows.

Turn on Wi-Fi syncing

1. [Connect iPhone and your computer using USB](#).
2. Do one of the following:
 - *In the Finder sidebar on your Mac:* Select your iPhone, click General at the top of the window, then select "Show this [device] when on Wi-Fi."

Note: To use the Finder to turn on Wi-Fi syncing, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, [use iTunes](#) to turn on Wi-Fi syncing.

 - *In the iTunes app on a Windows PC:* Click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window, click Summary, then select "Sync with this [device] over Wi-Fi" (in Options).
3. Click Apply.

By default, whenever iPhone is plugged into power and is connected over Wi-Fi to your Mac or to iTunes on your Windows PC, the computer syncs your selected content to iPhone.

See [Sync content between your Mac and iPhone or iPad over Wi-Fi](#) in the macOS User Guide or [Sync iTunes content on PC with devices on Wi-Fi](#) in the iTunes User Guide for Windows.

WARNING: If you delete a synced item from your computer, the item is also deleted from your iPhone the next time you sync.

Transfer files between iPhone and your computer

You can [use iCloud Drive](#) to keep your files up to date and accessible on all your devices, including Windows PCs. You can also transfer files between iPhone and other devices by [using AirDrop](#) and [sending email attachments](#).

Alternatively, you can transfer files for apps that support file sharing by connecting iPhone to a Mac (with a USB port and OS X 10.9 or later) or a Windows PC (with a USB port and Windows 7 or later).

Transfer files between iPhone and your Mac

1. Connect iPhone to your Mac.

You can [connect using USB](#), or if you [set up Wi-Fi syncing](#), you can use a Wi-Fi connection.

2. In the Finder sidebar on your Mac, select your iPhone.

Note: To use the Finder to transfer files, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, [use iTunes](#) to transfer files.

3. At the top of the Finder window, click Files, then do one of the following:

- *Transfer from Mac to iPhone:* Drag a file or a selection of files from a Finder window onto an app name in the list.
- *Transfer from iPhone to Mac:* Click the disclosure triangle beside an app name to see its files on your iPhone, then drag a file to a Finder window.

To delete a file from iPhone, select it below an app name, press Command-Delete, then click Delete.

Transfer files between iPhone and your Windows PC

1. Connect iPhone to your Windows PC.


You can [connect using USB](#), or if you [set up Wi-Fi syncing](#), you can use a Wi-Fi connection.

2. In iTunes on your Windows PC, click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window.

3. Click File Sharing, select an app in the list, then do one of the following:

- *Transfer a file from your iPhone to your computer:* Select the file you want to transfer in the list on the right, click "Save to," select where you want to save the file, then click Save To.
- *Transfer a file from your computer to your iPhone:* Click Add, select the file you want to transfer, then click Add.

To delete a file from iPhone, select the file, press the Delete key, then click Delete.

File transfers occur immediately. To view items transferred to iPhone, go to On My iPhone in the Files app  on iPhone. See [View files and folders in Files on iPhone](#).

Important: Syncing has no effect on file transfers, so syncing doesn't keep transferred files on iPhone up to date with the files on your computer.

See [Transfer files from your Mac to iPhone or iPad](#) in the macOS User Guide or [Transfer files between your PC and devices with iTunes](#) in the iTunes User Guide for Windows.

CarPlay

Intro to CarPlay and iPhone

Connect your iPhone to CarPlay to get turn-by-turn directions, make phone calls, listen to music, check your calendar, and more—all from your vehicle's display.



Note: CarPlay isn't available in all countries or regions (see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#)).


CarPlay is available on select automobiles (see the [CarPlay available models website](#)) and on select aftermarket navigation systems.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information for iPhone](#).

Connect iPhone to CarPlay

Set up CarPlay by connecting your iPhone and your vehicle using your vehicle's USB port or its wireless capability.

Ensure that Siri is enabled on iPhone

If Siri is not enabled on your iPhone, go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then turn on one of the following:


- Press Side Button for Siri (on an iPhone with Face ID)
- Press Home for Siri (on other iPhone models)

Connect using USB

Connect iPhone to your vehicle's USB port using an Apple-approved Lightning to USB cable.

The USB port may be labeled with the CarPlay logo or an image of a smartphone.

Connect wirelessly

1. On a vehicle that supports wireless CarPlay, do one of the following (see your owner's guide for detailed instructions):
 - Press and hold the voice command button on your steering wheel.
 - Make sure your vehicle is in wireless or Bluetooth pairing mode.
2. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > General > CarPlay > Available Cars.
3. Choose your vehicle.

Note: Some vehicles that support wireless CarPlay allow you to pair simply by plugging iPhone into your vehicle's USB port using a Lightning to USB cable. If supported, after you start CarPlay using USB, you're asked if you want to pair wireless CarPlay for future use. If you agree, the next time you go for a drive, iPhone connects wirelessly to CarPlay automatically.

On some vehicle models, CarPlay Home appears automatically when you connect iPhone.



If CarPlay Home doesn't appear, select the CarPlay logo on your vehicle's display.




Use Siri to Control CarPlay

CarPlay uses Siri voice control, so you can ask for what you want. (You can also [use your car's built-in controls](#) to control CarPlay.)


Ask Siri on CarPlay

1. Do one of the following until Siri beeps:
 - Press and hold the voice command button on the steering wheel.
 - Touch and hold the CarPlay Dashboard  or CarPlay Home  button on a touchscreen displaying CarPlay.

2. Ask Siri a question or to do something.

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like:

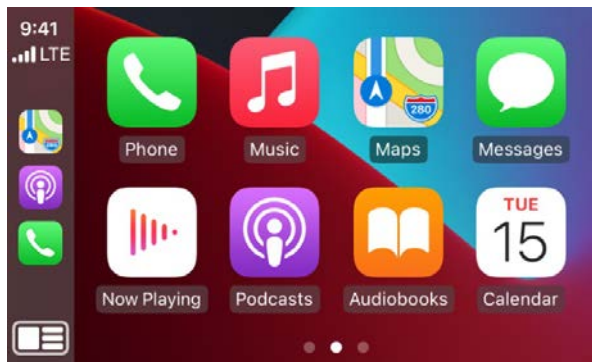
- “Get directions to the nearest coffee shop”
- “Call Eliza Block”
- “Play more songs like this one”
- “Show me the map”
- “What’s my next meeting?”
- “What’s the weather for today?”
- “Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home”

 **Tip:** Instead of waiting for Siri to notice that you’ve stopped talking, you can press and continue to hold the voice command button on the steering wheel while you speak, then release it when you finish.

Siri also makes suggestions in CarPlay for what you might want to do next, such as operate the garage door when you arrive home or drive to your next meeting. See [About Siri Suggestions](#).



Use your vehicle’s built-in controls to control CarPlay



CarPlay works with your vehicle’s built-in controls—for example, a touchscreen, a rotary knob, or a touchpad. To learn how to operate your display, see the owner’s guide that came with your vehicle. (You can also [use Siri](#) to control CarPlay.)



-
- *Open an app:* Tap the app on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to select the app, then press the knob.

- *Switch between CarPlay Dashboard and CarPlay Home:* CarPlay Dashboard displays several items you likely want to view or control, such as driving directions, audio playback, and suggestions from Siri. CarPlay Home shows all your CarPlay apps organized into pages.

To go to CarPlay Home, tap  on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to select , then press the knob.

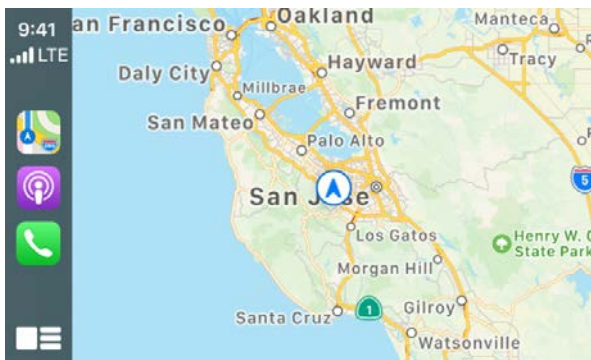
To go to CarPlay Dashboard, tap , or turn the rotary knob to select , then press the knob.

- *Return to your vehicle's Home Screen:* Select the icon with your vehicle's logo if it appears on CarPlay Home or, if available, the physical Home button on your radio.
- *Return to a recently used app:* Tap its icon on the edge of the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob to the icon, then press the knob.
- *View additional apps:* If you have more than eight apps, some may appear on another page of CarPlay Home. To view them, swipe left on the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob. (See [Use other apps with CarPlay.](#))
- *Scroll quickly through a list:* Tap the letters in the list on the right side of the touchscreen, or turn the rotary knob.
- *Control audio playback:* Use the audio playback controls on CarPlay Dashboard. Or from CarPlay Home, select Now Playing to view and control the current audio app.

Get turn-by-turn directions with CarPlay


Use Siri or open Maps to get turn-by-turn directions, traffic conditions, and estimated travel time (not available in all regions).

Note: To get directions, iPhone must be connected to the internet, and Location Services must be on. (See [Control the location information you share on iPhone.](#))



Find a route


CarPlay generates likely destinations using addresses from your email, text messages, contacts, and calendars—as well as places you frequent. You can also search for a location, use locations you saved as favorites and in collections, and find nearby attractions and services.




 **Ask Siri.** Say something like:

- “Find a gas station”
- “Give me directions home”
- “Take me to the Golden Gate Bridge”
- “Find a charging station”
- “Find coffee near me”

[Learn how to ask Siri](#)

Or you can use your vehicle’s built-in controls to open Maps in CarPlay and select a route.

Note: If you’re viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Maps doesn’t appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Maps.

1. With Maps open in CarPlay, do one of the following:
 - Select a place you saved as a favorite. (See [Save favorite places in Maps on iPhone.](#))
 - Select Destinations, then select a recent destination or scroll to select a destination you saved in a collection. (See [Organize places in My Guides in Maps on iPhone.](#))
 - Select Search, then select  to speak a search phrase, or select  to use the onscreen keyboard (if available). You can also select a destination from a category of nearby services, such as Parking or Restaurants.
2. If multiple routes appear, use your vehicle’s controls to select the route you prefer.
3. To call your destination before you leave, select .
4. To start turn-by-turn directions, select Go.

Maps shows directions from your current location.

When you arrive at your destination and exit your vehicle, a parked car marker appears in Maps on iPhone so you can easily [find your way](#) back to your vehicle.

Follow turn-by-turn directions

As CarPlay follows your progress, it speaks turn-by-turn directions to your destination.

Do any of the following at any time during your trip:

- *End directions at any time:* Say something to Siri like “Stop navigating,” or select the estimated time of arrival (ETA) display at the bottom left, then choose End Route.
- *Mute turn-by-turn directions:* Select the ETA display, then choose Mute.
- *Make a quick detour:* Say something to Siri like “Find a gas station.” Or select the ETA display, select Search, select a suggested service, then choose a destination.
- *Share your ETA:* (iOS 13.1 or later) Select the ETA display at the bottom left, select Share ETA, then choose one or more suggested contacts.

People using devices with iOS 13.1, iPadOS 13.1, or later receive a Maps notification with your ETA, and they can track your progress in Maps. People using devices with earlier versions receive the notification through iMessage. People using other mobile devices receive an SMS message. (Standard carrier data and text rates may apply.)

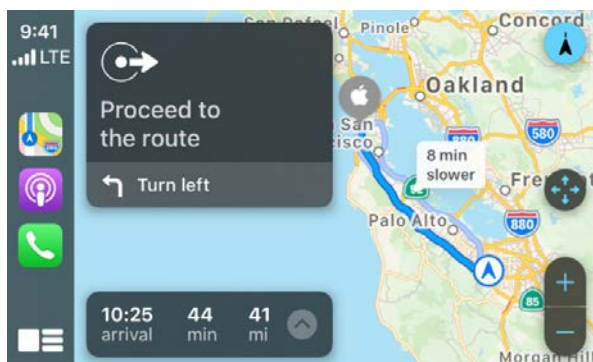
To stop sending ETA information, select Sharing ETA at the bottom of the CarPlay screen, then choose a contact.

- *Switch between showing only the next turn or turn guidance:* Tap the turn directions in the top left. The ETA Only display shows only your next turn, which may be all you want when you’re familiar with the route. The Guidance display provides additional information to help you navigate.






Note: For navigation apps that support the CarPlay Dashboard, Dashboard shows the last navigation app opened if no apps are navigating, the one that is actively navigating, or the last opened and actively navigating app if multiple apps are navigating.

Change the map view in CarPlay

Find your location on a map, zoom in and out, and move the map to see the detail you need.









When you [follow turn-by-turn directions](#), you can tap the touchscreen or turn the rotary knob, then do one of the following:

- *Switch between detailed and high-level views:* To see a detailed 3D map with your heading at the top of the screen, select . To see the route overview in 2D with north at the top of the screen, select .
- *Zoom in or out:* Select  or .
- *Scroll the map:* Select , then select a direction arrow on one of the edges of the screen. To return to turn-by-turn directions, tap Resume.


On some touchscreens, you can also drag the map to scroll it.

You can also change the map view when not following directions. Tap the touchscreen or turn the rotary knob, then do one of the following:

- *Show your current location:* Tap . Your position is marked in the middle of the map.
- *View a 3D map:* Tap 3D. To return to a 2D map, tap 2D.
- *Show your heading at the top of the screen:* Tap . To resume showing north at the top, tap .
- *Zoom in or out:* Select  or .
- *Scroll the map:* Select , then select a direction arrow at the edges of the screen. When finished, tap Done.


Make phone calls with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to make phone calls and listen to voicemail from your iPhone.

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: “Call Eliza” or “What voicemails have I gotten?” [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)


Or you can use your vehicle’s built-in controls to help make a call.

Open Phone in CarPlay, then select an option.

Note: If you’re viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Phone doesn’t appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Phone.

Play music with CarPlay

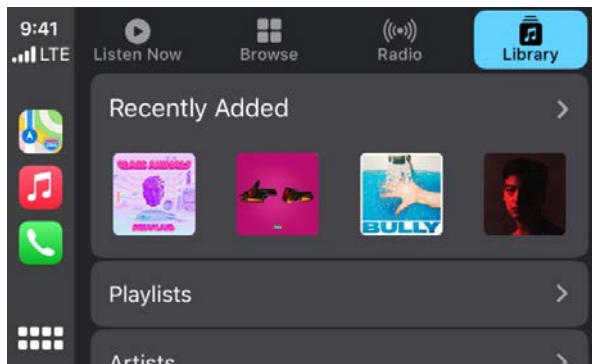
Use Siri or open Music in CarPlay to play music that’s available on your iPhone—including songs, artists, albums, playlists, and Radio.

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like:

- "Let's hear the Acoustic playlist"
- "Play 'You Need to Calm Down' by Taylor Swift"
- "Play more songs like this one"
- "Play the rest of this album"
- "Skip this song"
- "Repeat this song"
- "Shuffle this playlist"
- "Tune into ESPN Radio"





[Learn how to ask Siri](#)




If Siri doesn't find what you asked for, be more specific. For example, say "Play the radio station 'Pure Pop'" rather than saying "Play 'Pure Pop.'"



You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control music playback.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Music.


Button	Description
	Pause playback.
	Play the current song.
	Skip to the next song. When pressed and held, fast forward through the current song.
	Return to the song's beginning. When pressed again, return to the previous song. When pressed and held, rewind through the current song.

Button	Description
	Play songs in random order.
	Continually repeat the current song.
	Display controls to create a custom station based on the current song and to rate the current song.
Up Next	Display a list of songs queued for playback. (You can select a song from the list to skip the songs that proceed it.)

On some systems, Now Playing displays only a partial list of choices while you're driving. To choose among options not in the list, select More at the bottom of the screen, or use Siri by pressing and holding the voice command button on your steering wheel.

Use Calendar with CarPlay

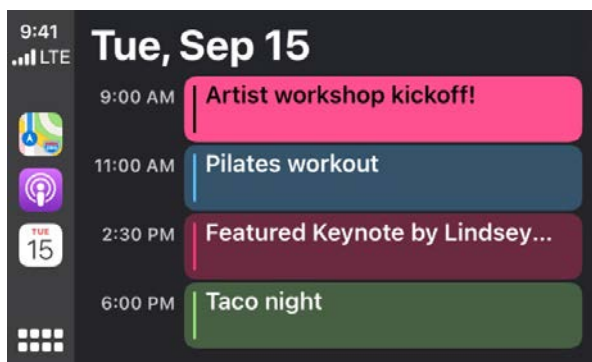
Use Siri or open Calendar in CarPlay to show and schedule events, appointments, and meetings.

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Do I have a meeting at 10?" or "Where is my 3:30 meeting?" [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

Upcoming events appear in CarPlay Dashboard. You can also use your vehicle's built-in controls to open Calendar in CarPlay to view upcoming events.


Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Calendar.

To see more information about an event, select it. Options may allow you to get directions to the event or phone into it.



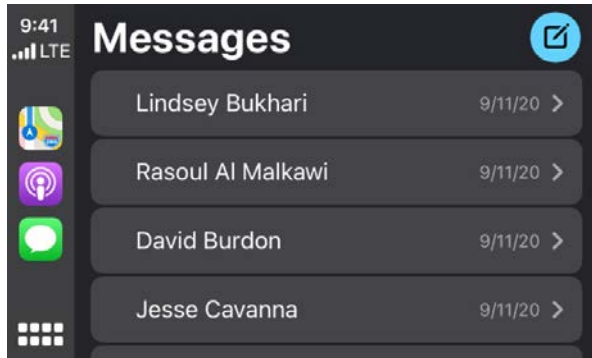
Send and receive text messages with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to send, hear, and reply to text messages from your iPhone.


 **Ask Siri.** Say something like:


- "Text my wife"
- "Text Eliza Block I'm in traffic and I'll be 15 minutes late to the meeting"
- "Read my text messages"

[Learn how to ask Siri](#)



Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to help send and receive messages. Open Messages in CarPlay, then do one of the following:


- *Hear unread messages or respond to a thread:* Select a conversation.
- *Start a new conversation:* Select .

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Messages doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Messages.


Play podcasts with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to play the podcasts that are on your iPhone.








 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: “Play ‘The Daily’ podcast” or “Rewind 15 seconds.” [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

Or you can use your vehicle’s built-in controls to open Podcasts and select a podcast to play.


Note: If you’re viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Podcasts.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle’s steering wheel, the buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control podcast playback.

Button	Description
	Play
	Pause
	Jump back 15 seconds
	Jump forward 30 seconds
	Choose a faster or slower playback speed

Play audiobooks with CarPlay

Use CarPlay to play the audiobooks that are on your iPhone.


 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: “Play Pride and Prejudice audiobook” or “Rewind 15 seconds.” [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

Or you can use your vehicle’s built-in controls to open Audiobooks and select a book to play. You can also use the controls on your vehicle’s steering wheel, buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control audiobook playback.


Note: If you’re viewing CarPlay Dashboard, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Audiobooks.

Listen to news stories with CarPlay






Use CarPlay to listen to Apple News Today audio briefings and, if you're an Apple News+ subscriber, audio versions of select news stories. (If you aren't a subscriber, you can listen to story previews.) Apple News, Apple News+, and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions.

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Jump back 15 seconds" or "Skip." [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

Or you can use your vehicle's built-in controls to open News and select a story to play.


Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and News doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including News.

You can also use the controls on your vehicle's steering wheel, the buttons on the Now Playing screen, and CarPlay Dashboard to control playback.

Button	Description
	Pause playback.
	Play the current story.
	Skip to the next story.
	Jump back 15 seconds.
	Choose a faster or slower playback speed.

Control your home from CarPlay

You can use suggestions from Siri that appear on CarPlay Dashboard or ask Siri directly to control HomeKit-enabled accessories, such as garage doors, lights, and door locks.


 **Ask Siri.** Say something like:

- "Open the garage door"
- "Did I leave the garage door open?"
- "Close the garage door"
- "Lock the front door"
- "Turn on the lights"
- "Turn off the lights"

[Learn how to ask Siri](#)

Use other apps with CarPlay

You can use Siri with CarPlay to access many of the apps on iPhone, including Reminders, Clock, Weather, and more.

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like:



- “Remind me to pack an umbrella when I get home”
- “Add milk to my grocery list”
- “Set my alarm for 6:00 a.m. tomorrow”
- “What’s the weather for today?”



[Learn how to ask Siri](#)

CarPlay works with select third-party apps that you download to your iPhone. Compatible apps—including audio, navigation, messaging, and voice-calling apps, and apps made by your vehicle manufacturer—show up automatically on CarPlay Home and can be controlled with Siri. For example, you can ask Siri to give you directions from your favorite navigation app. CarPlay also works with additional third-party apps for EV charging, parking, and quick food ordering.

Note: Compatible third-party navigation apps appear on CarPlay Dashboard while in use (iOS 13.4 or later). When you’re not actively navigating, or if you’re navigating using more than one app, CarPlay Dashboard displays the last compatible navigation app that was used.

Rearrange the icons on CarPlay Home

1. When you’re not operating your vehicle, open Settings on your iPhone, go to General > CarPlay, select your vehicle, then tap Customize.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *Move an icon:* Drag  up or down in the list.
 - *Remove an icon:* Tap  next to the icon, then tap Remove.

Only icons that have  next to them can be removed.
 - *Add an icon back to CarPlay:* Below More Apps at the bottom of the page, tap  next to the icon.

Your icon changes appear on CarPlay Home the next time you connect to CarPlay.


Change settings in CarPlay

In Settings in CarPlay, you can change the Wallpaper, turn on Do Not Disturb While Driving, change how CarPlay looks on the display, turn suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard on or off, and show or hide album art.


Use Do Not Disturb While Driving with CarPlay

Do Not Disturb While Driving helps you stay focused on the road. While your iPhone is connected to CarPlay, notifications and text messages are silenced or limited.

1. Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls.

Note: If you're viewing CarPlay Dashboard and Settings doesn't appear in the recent apps list on the left, tap  to see pages of all of your CarPlay apps, including Settings.

2. Select Do Not Disturb While Driving.
3. Turn on Activate With CarPlay.

When you're not driving, you can do the following in Settings  on iPhone:

- Choose who to [send an automatic reply to](#).
 - [Customize the auto-reply text message](#).
-

Switch the appearance of CarPlay

CarPlay is set to dark appearance by default in most vehicles. If you prefer to have CarPlay automatically switch between dark and light appearance, do the following:

1. Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls.
2. Select Appearance.
3. Select Always Dark.

The dark appearance is optimized for viewing in low-light environments, such as at night.

Change the wallpaper in CarPlay

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, select Wallpaper, then choose one of the available options.

Hide or show suggestions in CarPlay Dashboard

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, then turn Suggestions in CarPlay off or on.

Hide or show album art

Open Settings in CarPlay using your vehicle's built-in controls, then turn Show Album Art off or on.


Accessibility

Get started with accessibility features on iPhone

iPhone provides many accessibility features to support your vision, physical and motor, hearing, and learning needs. Learn how to configure these features and set up shortcuts for easy access.


Turn on accessibility features during setup

You can turn on many accessibility features right away when you first set up iPhone. Turn on iPhone, then do any of the following:

- *Turn on VoiceOver:* Triple-click the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or triple-click the Home button (on other iPhone models).
 - *Turn on Zoom:* Double-tap the screen with three fingers.
 - *Turn on Switch Control, Larger Text, Smart Invert, and more:* Choose a language and country, tap , then choose the features you want.
-

Change accessibility settings

After you set up iPhone, you can adjust accessibility settings.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility.
2. Choose any of the following features:
 - Vision
 - [VoiceOver](#)
 - [Zoom](#)
 - [Magnifier](#)
 - [Display & Text Size](#)
 - [Motion](#)
 - [Spoken Content](#)
 - [Audio Descriptions](#)

- Physical and Motor
 - [Touch](#)
 - [Face ID & Attention](#)
 - [Switch Control](#)
 - [Voice Control](#)
 - [Side or Home Button](#)
 - [Apple TV Remote](#)
 - [Pointer Control](#)
 - [Keyboards](#)
 - [AirPods Pro](#)
 - Hearing
 - [Hearing Devices](#)
 - [Sound Recognition](#)
 - [RTT/TTY](#)
 - [Audio & Visual](#)
 - [Subtitles & Captioning](#)
 - General
 - [Guided Access](#)
 - [Siri](#)
 - [Accessibility Shortcut](#)
-

VoiceOver

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

With VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—you can use iPhone even if you don't see the screen. VoiceOver gives audible descriptions of what's on your screen—from battery level, to who's calling, to which app your finger is on. You can also adjust the speaking rate and pitch to suit your needs.


When you touch the screen or drag your finger over it, VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. To interact with the item, such as a button or link, or to navigate to another item, [use VoiceOver gestures](#).

When you go to a new screen, VoiceOver plays a sound, then selects and speaks the name of the first item on the screen (typically in the top-left corner). VoiceOver tells you when the display changes to landscape or portrait orientation, when the screen becomes dimmed or locked, and what's active on the Lock Screen when you wake iPhone.

Turn VoiceOver on or off

Important: VoiceOver changes the gestures you use to control iPhone. When VoiceOver is on, you must use VoiceOver gestures to operate iPhone.


To turn VoiceOver on or off, use any of the following methods:

- Summon Siri and say "Turn on VoiceOver" or "Turn off VoiceOver."
 - [Triple-click the side button](#) (on an iPhone with Face ID).
 - [Triple-click the Home button](#) (on an iPhone with a Home button).
 - [Use Control Center](#).
 - Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn the setting on or off.
-

Learn and practice VoiceOver gestures

You can practice VoiceOver gestures in a special area without affecting iPhone or its settings. When you practice a gesture, VoiceOver describes the gesture and the resulting action.


Try different techniques to discover which works best for you. If a gesture doesn't work, try a quicker movement, especially for a double-tap or swipe gesture. To swipe, try brushing the screen quickly with your finger or fingers. For best results using multifinger gestures, touch the screen with some space between your fingers.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Turn on VoiceOver, tap VoiceOver Practice, then double-tap to start.
3. Practice the following gestures with one, two, three, and four fingers:
 - Tap
 - Double-tap
 - Triple-tap
 - Swipe left, right, up, or down
4. When you finish practicing, tap Done, then double-tap to exit.

Change your VoiceOver settings on iPhone


You can customize the settings for VoiceOver, such as the audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, and verbosity.

Adjust the VoiceOver volume and other audio options

- To increase or decrease the volume, press the volume buttons on iPhone.
 - To set other audio options, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, then set options such as the following:
 - *Sounds & Haptics*: Adjust and preview sound effects and haptics.
 - *Audio Ducking*: Temporarily reduce media playback volume when VoiceOver speaks.
 - *Auto-select Speaker in Call*: Automatically switch to the speaker during a call when you're not holding iPhone to your ear.
 - *Send to HDMI*: Route audio to externally connected devices, such as an instrument amplifier or a DJ mixer.
 - *Speak on Calls*: During phone and FaceTime calls, other participants hear VoiceOver speech on your device.
-


Set the VoiceOver language

VoiceOver uses the same language you choose for your iPhone. VoiceOver pronunciation of some languages is affected by the Region Format you choose.

1. Go to Settings  > General > Language & Region.
 2. Tap iPhone Language, then choose a language.
-

Adjust the speaking voice

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then do any of the following:

- *Adjust the speaking rate*: Drag the Speaking Rate slider.
 - *Choose a voice*: Tap Speech > Voice, then choose a voice. To download an enhanced voice, tap .
 - *Adjust the pitch*: Tap Speech, then drag the slider. You can also turn on Use Pitch Change to have VoiceOver use a higher pitch when speaking the first item of a group (such as a list or table) and a lower pitch when speaking the last item of a group.
-

- *Specify the pronunciation of certain words:* Tap Speech > Pronunciations, tap +, enter a phrase, then dictate or spell out how you want the phrase to be pronounced.

Note: You can dictate only if you turned on Enable Dictation in Settings > General > Keyboards.

Set how much VoiceOver tells you

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then tap any of the following:


- *Verbosity:* Choose options to have VoiceOver speak hints, punctuation, uppercase letters, embedded links, and more. VoiceOver can even confirm rotor actions.

To change how VoiceOver speaks punctuation, tap Punctuation, then choose a group. You can also create new groups—for example, a programming group in which “[” is spoken as “left brack.”

- *Always Speak Notifications:* VoiceOver reads notifications, including incoming text messages as they occur, even if iPhone is locked. Unacknowledged notifications are repeated when you unlock iPhone.
-

Customize VoiceOver settings for an activity

You can customize a group of VoiceOver settings for an activity such as programming. Apply the settings automatically when you open certain apps or by adjusting the rotor.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Activities.
 2. Choose an existing activity or tap Add Activity.
 3. Adjust settings for speech, audio, verbosity, and braille.
 4. Choose Apps or Context to automatically apply the settings for this activity.
-

Adjust VoiceOver visuals

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn on any of the following:

- *Large Cursor:* If you have difficulty seeing the black outline around the selected item, you can enlarge and thicken the outline.
 - *Caption Panel:* The text spoken by VoiceOver is displayed at the bottom of the screen.
-

Learn VoiceOver gestures on iPhone

When VoiceOver is on, standard touchscreen gestures have different effects, and additional gestures let you move around the screen and control individual items. VoiceOver gestures include two-, three-, and four-finger taps and swipes.

You can use different techniques to perform VoiceOver gestures. For example, you can perform a two-finger tap using two fingers on one hand, one finger on each hand, or your thumbs. Instead of selecting an item and double-tapping, you can use a split-tap gesture—touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another finger.

Explore and speak items on the screen

To explore the screen, drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of each item you touch.

You can also use VoiceOver gestures to explore the screen in order, from top to bottom and left to right.

Action	Gesture
Select and speak an item	Tap or touch the item
Select the next item	Swipe right
Select the previous item	Swipe left
Select the first item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the top of the screen
Select the last item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the bottom of the screen
Speak the entire screen from the top	Two-finger swipe up
Speak the entire screen from the selected item	Two-finger swipe down
Pause or continue speaking	Two-finger tap
Speak additional information, such as the position within a list or whether text is selected	Three-finger tap

Scroll up, down, left, and right


Use VoiceOver gestures to move to another page.

Action	Gesture
Scroll up one page	Three-finger swipe down
Scroll down one page	Three-finger swipe up
Scroll left one page	Three-finger swipe right
Scroll right one page	Three-finger swipe left

Take action on an item

Use VoiceOver gestures to perform actions on an item.

Action	Gesture
Select an item	Tap
Activate the selected item	Double-tap
Double-tap the selected item	Triple-tap
Drag a slider	Tap the slider to select it, then swipe up or down with one finger; or double-tap and hold the slider until you hear three rising tones, then drag the slider
Start or stop the current action (for example, play or pause music or a video, take a photo in Camera, start or stop a recording, start or stop the stopwatch)	Two-finger double-tap
Dismiss an alert or return to the previous screen	Two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z")
Edit an item's label to make it easier to find	Two-finger double-tap and hold

 **Tip:** As an alternative to selecting an item and double-tapping to activate it, touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another.

Use gestures to control VoiceOver

Use these gestures to control VoiceOver.

Action	Gesture
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	Three-finger double-tap. If both VoiceOver and Zoom are enabled, use the three-finger triple-tap gesture.
Turn the screen curtain on or off (When the screen curtain is on, the screen contents are active even though the display is turned off.)	Three-finger triple-tap. If both VoiceOver and Zoom are enabled, use the three-finger quadruple-tap gesture.

Use a standard gesture

Double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones, then make the gesture. When you lift your finger, VoiceOver gestures resume.

For example, to drag a volume slider with your finger instead of swiping up and down, select the slider, double-tap and hold, wait for the three tones, then slide left or right.

Open the Item Chooser

Two-finger triple-tap.

To move quickly through the list of items, type a name in the search field, swipe right or left to move through the list alphabetically, or tap the table index to the right of the list and swipe up or down. You can also [use handwriting](#) to select an item by writing its name.

To dismiss the Item Chooser without making a selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

Use the VoiceOver rotor

You can use the rotor to change VoiceOver settings, jump from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more. For details, see [Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone](#).

Use these gestures to use the rotor.

Action	Gesture
Choose a rotor setting	Two-finger rotation
Move to the previous item or increase (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe up
Move to the next item or decrease (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe down

Operate iPhone using VoiceOver gestures

When VoiceOver is on, you need to use special gestures to unlock iPhone, go to the Home Screen, open Control Center, switch apps, and more.

Unlock iPhone

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Wake iPhone and glance at it, then drag up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear two rising tones.
- *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Press the Home button.

If prompted, enter your passcode. To avoid having your passcode spoken as you enter it, [enter your passcode silently using handwriting mode](#) or [type onscreen braille](#).

Go to the Home Screen

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear two rising tones, then lift your finger.
 - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press the Home button.
-

Switch to another app

Swipe right or left with four fingers to cycle through the open apps.

Alternatively, you can use the App Switcher:

1. Open the App Switcher using one of the following methods:
 - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you feel the second vibration or hear three tones, then lift your finger.
 - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Double-click the Home button.
 2. To browse the open apps, swipe left or right until the app you want is selected.
 3. Double-tap to open the app.
-

Open Control Center

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you feel a vibration or hear the second tone.
- *On all iPhone models:* Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe up with three fingers. Or touch and hold the bottom of the screen until you hear a tone, then swipe up.

To dismiss Control Center, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

View notifications

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you feel the second vibration or hear the third tone.

To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

- *On all iPhone models:* Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe down with three fingers. Or touch and hold the top of the screen until you hear a tone, then swipe down.

To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

Speak status bar information

1. Tap the status bar at the top of the screen.
 2. Swipe left or right to hear the time, battery state, Wi-Fi signal strength, and more.
-

Rearrange apps on your Home Screen

Use one of the following methods:

- *Drag and drop:* Tap an icon on the Home Screen, then double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones. The item's relative location is described as you drag. Lift your finger when the icon is in its new location. Drag an icon to the edge of the screen to move it to another Home Screen.
- *Move actions:* Tap an app, then swipe down to hear available actions. When you hear "Edit Mode," double-tap to start arranging apps. Find the app you want to move, then swipe down to the Move action and double-tap. Move the VoiceOver cursor to the new destination for the app, then choose from the available actions: Cancel Move, Create New Folder, Add to Folder, Move Before, or Move After.

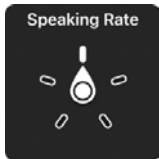
When you're finished, tap Done, then double-tap.

Search from the Home Screen

1. Tap anywhere on the Home Screen outside the status bar.
 2. Swipe down with three fingers.
-

Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPhone

You can use the VoiceOver rotor to change how VoiceOver works. You can adjust the VoiceOver volume or speaking rate, move from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more.



When you [use Magic Keyboard to control VoiceOver](#), use the rotor to adjust settings such as volume, speech rate, use of pitch or phonetics, typing echo, and reading of punctuation.

Use the VoiceOver rotor



1. When VoiceOver is turned on, rotate two fingers on your screen as if you're turning a dial. If you prefer to use one finger on each hand, simultaneously drag up with one finger and drag down with the other.

VoiceOver speaks the rotor setting. Keep rotating your fingers to hear more settings. Stop rotating your fingers when you hear the setting you want.

2. Swipe your finger up or down on the screen to use the setting.

The available rotor settings and their effects depend on what you're doing. For example, if you choose Headings when you're browsing a webpage, a swipe down or up will move the VoiceOver cursor to the next or previous heading.

Customize the VoiceOver rotor

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
 2. Do any of the following:
 - *Add or reorder the rotor settings:* Tap Rotor, then choose the settings you want, or drag  to reorder settings.
 - *Add another language:* Tap Speech > Add New Language (below Rotor Languages), then choose a language.
 - *Have VoiceOver confirm rotor actions:* Tap Verbosity, then turn on Speak Confirmation.
-

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

VoiceOver changes how you use the onscreen keyboard when you activate an editable text field. You can enter, select, and delete text; change the keyboard language; and more.

Enter text with the onscreen keyboard

1. Select a text field, then double-tap.

The insertion point and the onscreen keyboard appear.

2. Enter text using one of the following methods:

- *Standard typing (default)*: Select a key on the keyboard by swiping left or right, then double-tap to enter the character. Or move your finger around the keyboard to select a key and, while continuing to touch the key with one finger, tap the screen with another finger. VoiceOver speaks the key when it's selected, and again when the character is entered.
- *Touch typing*: Touch a key on the keyboard to select it, then lift your finger to enter the character. If you touch the wrong key, slide your finger to the key you want. VoiceOver speaks the character for each key as you touch it, but doesn't enter a character until you lift your finger.
- *Direct Touch typing*: VoiceOver is disabled for the keyboard only, so you can type just as you do when VoiceOver is off.
- *Dictation*: Use a two-finger double-tap on the keyboard to start and stop dictation.

To enter an accented character, use one of the following methods:

- *Standard typing (default)*: Select the plain character, then double-tap and hold until you hear a tone indicating alternate characters have appeared. Drag left or right to select and hear the choices. Release your finger to enter the current selection.
- *Touch typing*: Touch and hold a character until the alternate characters appear.



Edit text with the onscreen keyboard

- *Move the insertion point*: Swipe up or down to move the insertion point forward or backward in the text. Use the rotor to choose whether you want to move the insertion point by character, by word, or by line. To jump to the beginning or end, double-tap the text.


VoiceOver makes a sound when the insertion point moves, and speaks the character, word, or line that the insertion point moves across. When moving forward by words, the insertion point is placed at the end of each word, before the space or punctuation that follows. When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the end of the preceding word, before the space or punctuation that follows it.

- *Move the insertion point past the punctuation at the end of a word or sentence*: Use the rotor to switch back to character mode.

When moving the insertion point by line, VoiceOver speaks each line as you move across it. When moving forward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the next line (except when you reach the last line of a paragraph, when the insertion point is moved to the end of the line just spoken). When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the line that's spoken.

- *Delete a character:* Use .
 - *Select text:* Use one of the following methods.
 - Set the rotor to Text Selection, swipe up or down to choose Character, Word, Line, or Sentence, then swipe left or right to move backward or forward. (You may need to enable Text Selection—go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor.)
 - Set the rotor to Edit, swipe up or down to choose Select or Select All, then double-tap. If you choose Select, the word closest to the insertion point is selected when you double-tap. To increase or decrease the selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a “z”) to dismiss the pop-up menu, then pinch.
 - *Cut, copy, or paste:* Set the rotor to Edit, select the text, swipe up or down to choose Cut, Copy, or Paste, then double-tap.
 - *Fix misspelled words:* Set the rotor to Misspelled Words, then swipe up or down to jump to the previous or next misspelled word. Swipe left or right to choose a suggested replacement, then double-tap to use the replacement.
 - *Undo:* Shake iPhone, swipe left or right to choose the action to undo, then double-tap.
-

Change the keyboard settings

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
 2. Tap any of the following:
 - *Typing Style:* You can choose a new style. Or, set the rotor to Typing Mode, then swipe up or down.
 - *Phonetic Feedback:* Speak text character by character. VoiceOver first speaks the character, then its phonetic equivalent—for example, “f” and then “foxtrot.”
 - *Typing Feedback:* Choose to speak characters, words, both, or nothing.
 - *Rotor:* Select the settings you want to include in the rotor.
 - *Speech:* Tap Add New Language (below Rotor Languages), then choose a language.
 - *Verbosity:* Tap Deleting Text. To have VoiceOver speak deleted characters in a lower pitch, tap Change Pitch.
-

Write with your finger using VoiceOver on iPhone

With Handwriting mode, you can enter text by writing characters on the screen with your finger. In addition to normal text entry, use handwriting mode to enter your iPhone passcode silently or to open apps from the Home Screen.

Use handwriting mode

1. Set the rotor to Handwriting.

If Handwriting isn't in the rotor, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor, then add it.

2. To choose a character type (lowercase, numbers, uppercase, or punctuation), swipe up or down with three fingers.

To hear the selected character type, tap with three fingers.

3. Trace a character on the screen with your finger.

You can also do any of the following:

- *Enter an alternate character (a character with an accent, for example):* Write the character, then swipe up or down with two fingers until you hear the type of character you want.
 - *Enter a space:* Swipe right with two fingers.
 - *Go to a new line:* Swipe right with three fingers.
 - *Delete the previous character:* Swipe left with two fingers.
4. To exit handwriting mode, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z"), or set the rotor to a different setting.

Enter your passcode silently with handwriting mode

1. On the passcode screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.
2. Write the characters of your passcode with your finger.

Select an item on the Home Screen

1. On the Home Screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.
2. Start writing the name of the item with your finger.

If there are multiple matches, continue to spell the name until it's unique, or swipe up or down with two fingers to choose from the current matches.

Quickly navigate a long list

1. Select the index to the right of the list (for example, next to your Contacts list or in the VoiceOver Item Chooser).
2. Set the rotor to Handwriting, then use your finger to write the letter you want to navigate to.


Use VoiceOver on iPhone with an Apple external keyboard

If you [use an Apple external keyboard](#) with iPhone, you can use keyboard shortcuts to activate VoiceOver commands.

Additionally, you can use VoiceOver Help to learn the keyboard layout and the actions associated with various key combinations. VoiceOver Help speaks keys and keyboard commands as you type them, without performing the associated action.

Choose the VoiceOver modifier

The modifier is a key or set of keys you press with one or more other keys to enter VoiceOver commands. You can set the modifier to be the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys pressed at the same time.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Typing > Modifier Keys.
2. Choose the modifier for VoiceOver commands: the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys.

This modifier is abbreviated as "VO" in the tables below.

VoiceOver keyboard commands

VO = modifier keys

Action	Shortcut
Turn on VoiceOver Help	VO-K
Turn off VoiceOver Help	Esc (Escape)
Select the next or previous item	VO-Right Arrow or VO-Left Arrow
Activate the selected item	VO-Space bar
Touch and hold the selected item	VO-Shift-M
Read from the current position	VO-A
Read from the top	VO-B
Pause or resume reading	Control
Copy the last spoken text to the clipboard	VO-Shift-C
Search for text	VO-F
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	VO-S
Go to the Home Screen	VO-H

Move to the status bar	VO-M
Open the notifications screen	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Up Arrow
Open Control Center	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Down Arrow
Open Spotlight Search	Option-Up Arrow
Open the App Switcher	VO-H-H
Open the Item Chooser	VO-I
Change the label of the selected item	VO-/
Start, stop, or pause an action	VO-Hyphen
Swipe up or down	VO-Up Arrow or VO-Down Arrow
Adjust the rotor	VO-Command-Left Arrow or VO-Command-Right Arrow
Adjust the setting specified by the rotor	VO-Command-Up Arrow or VO-Command-Down Arrow
Turn the screen curtain on or off	VO-Shift-F11
Return to the previous screen	Esc

Quick Nav using the arrow keys

Turn on Quick Nav to control VoiceOver using the arrow keys.

Action	Shortcut
Turn Quick Nav on or off	Left Arrow-Right Arrow
Select the next or previous item	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Select the next or previous item specified by the rotor	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Select the first or last item	Control-Up Arrow or Control-Down Arrow
Tap an item	Up Arrow-Down Arrow
Scroll up, down, left, or right	Option-Up Arrow, Option-Down Arrow, Option-Left Arrow, or Option-Right Arrow
Adjust the rotor	Up Arrow-Left Arrow or Up Arrow-Right Arrow

Single-key Quick Nav for web browsing

To navigate a webpage quickly, turn on Quick Nav (VO-Q), then press keys on the keyboard to navigate to specific item types, such as headings or links. To move to the previous item, hold the Shift key as you press a key for the item type.

Item type	Shortcut
Heading	H
Link	L
Text field	R
Button	B
Form control	C
Image	I
Table	T
Static text	S
ARIA landmark	W
List	X
Item of the same type	M
Level 1 heading	1
Level 2 heading	2
Level 3 heading	3
Level 4 heading	4
Level 5 heading	5
Level 6 heading	6

Text editing

Use these commands (with Quick Nav turned off) to work with text. VoiceOver reads the text as you move the insertion point.


Action	Shortcut
Go forward or back one character	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Go forward or back one word	Option-Right Arrow or Option-Left Arrow
Go up or down one line	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the line	Command-Left Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the previous or next paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the top or bottom of the text field	Command-Up Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Select text as you move	Shift + any of the insertion point movement commands above
Select all text	Command-A
Copy, cut, or paste the selected text	Command-C, Command-X, or Command-V
Undo or redo last change	Command-Z or Shift-Command-Z

Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone

iPhone supports many international braille tables and refreshable braille displays. You can connect a Bluetooth wireless braille display to read VoiceOver output, including contracted and uncontracted braille and equations using Nemeth Code. When you edit text, the braille display shows the text in context, and your edits are automatically converted between braille and printed text. You can also use a braille display with input keys to control your iPhone when VoiceOver is turned on.


For a list of supported braille displays, see the Apple Support article [Braille displays supported by iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

Connect a braille display and learn commands to control iPhone

1. Turn on the braille display.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then choose the display.
3. On iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille, then choose the display.
4. To see the braille commands for controlling iPhone, tap More Info, then tap Braille Commands.


See the Apple Support article [Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

Change the braille display settings

1. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille.
2. Set any of the following:

Setting	Description
Output	Set the braille display output to uncontracted six-dot, uncontracted eight-dot, or contracted braille.
Input	Choose the input method for entering braille on the display—uncontracted six-dot, uncontracted eight-dot, or contracted braille. You can also turn on Automatic Translation.
Braille Screen Input	Choose the input method for entering braille using the screen. See Type braille directly on the iPhone screen using VoiceOver .
Braille Tables	Add tables to the Braille Table rotor.
Status Cells	Turn on the general and text status cells and choose their location.
Equations use Nemeth Code	Turn on Nemeth Code for mathematical equations.
Show On-screen Keyboard	Display the keyboard on the screen.
Turn Pages when Panning	Automatically turn pages when panning.
Word Wrap	Wrap words to the next line.
Alert Display Duration	Adjust the duration that an alert is visible on your braille display.
Ignore Chord Duration	Adjust the amount of time required before subsequent key presses are recognized as braille chords.
Auto Advance Duration	Adjust this setting to your preferred reading speed.

Output closed captions in braille during media playback


1. On iPhone, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Verbosity.
2. Choose Braille or Speech and Braille.

Type braille directly on the iPhone screen using VoiceOver

If you turn on Braille Screen Input, you can use your fingers to enter six-dot braille or contracted braille directly on the iPhone screen, without a physical braille keyboard.

Enter braille on the screen


1. Set the rotor to Braille Screen Input.

If you don't see Braille Screen Input in the rotor, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor, then select it from the list.

2. Place iPhone in one of the following positions:

- *Tabletop mode*: Lay iPhone flat in front of you.
- *Screen away mode*: Hold iPhone with the screen facing away so your fingers curl back to tap the screen.

3. Enter braille characters by tapping the screen with one or more fingers at the same time.

 **Tip:** To have iPhone read dots aloud, tap and hold the dots, then when you hear the timer tones and announcement, release the dots.


To move the entry dots to match your natural finger positions, tap and lift your right three fingers all at once to position dots 4, 5, and 6, followed immediately by your left three fingers for dots 1, 2, and 3.

You can also use gestures to perform actions such as the following:

Action	Gesture
Enter a space	Swipe right with one finger; in screen away mode, swipe to <i>your</i> right
Delete the previous character	Swipe left with one finger
Move to a new line	Swipe right with two fingers
Cycle through spelling suggestions	Swipe up or down with one finger
Enter a carriage return, or send a message (in Messages)	Swipe up with three fingers
Cycle through the braille modes	Swipe left or right with three fingers
Translate immediately (when contractions are enabled)	Swipe down with two fingers
Switch to the next keyboard	Swipe up with two fingers


4. To exit Braille Screen Input, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z"), or adjust the rotor to another setting.

Change Braille Screen Input settings

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille > Braille Screen Input.
2. Do any of the following:
 - Set six-dot or contracted Braille as the default.
 - Reverse dot positions for six-dot and eight-dot Braille.
3. To view or edit the commands and gestures you can perform when Braille Screen Input is turned on, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands > Braille Screen Input.

Customize VoiceOver gestures and keyboard shortcuts on iPhone


You can customize the gestures and keyboard shortcuts that activate VoiceOver commands.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands.
 2. Tap any of the following:
 - *All Commands*: Navigate to the command you want to customize, then tap Edit, Add Gesture, or Add Keyboard Shortcut.
 - *Touch Gestures*: List the gestures and the associated commands.
 - *Handwriting*: List the gestures for handwriting and the associated commands.
 - *Braille Screen Input*: List the gestures for Braille Screen Input and the associated commands.
-

To clear your custom gestures and keyboard shortcuts, tap Reset VoiceOver Commands.

Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device

If you use a pointer device with iPhone, you can adjust how it works with VoiceOver.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
 2. Below Pointer Control, tap any of the following:
 - *Pointer*: Set the pointer to ignore, follow, or move the VoiceOver cursor.
 - *Speak Under Pointer*: You can adjust the delay to speak the item under the pointer.
-

Use VoiceOver in apps on iPhone

You can use VoiceOver to interact with apps if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver is supported in the built-in Apple apps that came with your iPhone—such as Maps, Camera, Photos, Voice Memos, Safari, and more. With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of images and screen elements even on webpages and in apps without accessibility information.

Make and receive calls in Phone using VoiceOver

Use VoiceOver to make and receive phone calls.

- *Answer or end a call*: Double-tap the screen with two fingers.



When a phone call is established with VoiceOver on, the screen displays the numeric keypad by default, instead of showing call options.
 - *Display call options*: Select the Hide Keypad button in the lower-right corner, then double-tap.
-


- *Display the numeric keypad again:* Select the Keypad button near the center of the screen, then double-tap.
-

Read PDF documents in Apple Books or Files using VoiceOver

VoiceOver can read detailed information—such as forms, tables, and lists—in PDF documents.

Browse the web in Safari using VoiceOver

- *Search the web:* Select the search field, double-tap to invoke the keyboard, enter your search, then swipe right or left to move down or up the list of suggested search phrases. Then double-tap the screen to search the web using the selected phrase.
- *Skip to the next page element of a particular type:* Set the rotor to the element type—such as headings, links, and form controls—then swipe up or down.
- *Set the rotor settings for web browsing:* Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor. Tap to select or deselect settings, or drag  up or down to reposition an item.
- *Skip images while navigating:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigate Images. You can choose to skip all images or only those without descriptions.
- *Reduce page clutter for easier reading and navigation:* Select the Reader item in the Safari address field (not available for all webpages).
- *Allow websites to customize their behavior for assistive technologies:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Web, then turn on Accessibility Events. This setting may reveal whether an assistive technology is active on your iPhone.

 **Tip:** If you [use an Apple external keyboard](#) with iPhone, you can use single-key Quick Nav commands to navigate webpages.

Read math equations using VoiceOver


VoiceOver can read math equations on the web (encoded using MathML) and in supported Apple apps such as Numbers and Keynote.

- *Hear an equation:* Have VoiceOver read the text as usual. VoiceOver says “math” before it starts reading an equation.
- *Explore the equation:* Double-tap the selected equation to display it in full screen and move through it one element at a time. Swipe left or right to read elements of the equation. Use the rotor to select Symbols, Small Expressions, Medium Expressions, or Large Expressions, then swipe up or down to hear the next element of that size. You can continue to double-tap the selected element to “drill down” into the equation to focus on the selected element, then swipe left or right, or up or down, to read one part at a time.

Equations spoken by VoiceOver can also be output to a braille device using Nemeth Code, as well as the codes used by Unified English Braille, British English, French, and Greek. See [Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPhone](#).

Navigate in Maps with VoiceOver

In the Maps app, you can use VoiceOver to explore a region, browse points of interest, follow roads, zoom in or out, select a pin, or get information about a location.

- *Control how the map tracks your current location:* Double-tap  until you hear the tracking option you want:
 - *Tracking on:* The map automatically centers on your current location.
 - *Tracking on with heading:* The map automatically centers on your current location and rotates so that the heading you're facing is at the top of the screen. In this mode, iPhone speaks street names and points of interest as you approach them.
 - *Tracking off:* The map doesn't automatically center on your current location.
- *Explore the map:* Drag your finger around the screen, or swipe left or right to move to another item.
- *Zoom in or out:* Select the map, set the rotor to Zoom, then swipe down or up with one finger.
- *Pan the map:* Swipe with three fingers.
- *Browse visible points of interest:* Set the rotor to Points of Interest, then swipe up or down with one finger.
- *Follow a road:* Hold your finger down on the road, wait until you hear "pause to follow," then move your finger along the road while listening to the guide tone. The pitch increases when you stray from the road.
- *Select a pin:* Touch a pin, or swipe left or right to select the pin.
- *Get information about a location:* With a pin selected, double-tap to display the information flag. Swipe left or right to select the More Info button, then double-tap to display the information page.


Use Camera, Photos, and Voice Memos with VoiceOver

Use VoiceOver gestures to take and edit Camera videos and Voice Memo recordings.

- *Pause or continue a recording:* Double-tap the screen with two fingers.
- *Trim a video:* While viewing a video in Photos, double-tap the screen to display the video controls, then select the beginning or end of the trim tool. Then swipe up to drag to the right, or swipe down to drag to the left. VoiceOver announces the amount of time the current position will trim from the recording. To complete the trim, select Trim, then double-tap.

- *Trim a voice memo:* Select the memo in Voice Memos, tap Edit, then tap Start Trimming. Select the beginning or end of the selection, double-tap and hold, then drag to adjust. VoiceOver announces the amount of time the current position will trim from the recording. Tap Play to preview the trimmed recording. When you've got it the way you want it, tap Trim.
-

Use VoiceOver Recognition on the web or in apps without accessibility information


1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition.
 2. Turn on any of the following:
 - *Image Descriptions:* Get descriptions of images in apps and on the web.
 - *Screen Recognition:* Get descriptions of screen elements in apps.
 - *Text Recognition:* Get descriptions of text found in images.
 3. Tap Feedback Style, then choose Speak, Play Sound, or Do Nothing.
-

Vision

Zoom in on the iPhone screen

In many apps, you can zoom in or out on specific items. For example, you can double-tap or pinch to look closer in Photos or expand webpage columns in Safari. You can also use the Zoom feature to magnify the screen no matter what you're doing. You can magnify the entire screen (Full Screen Zoom) or magnify only part of the screen with a resizable lens (Window Zoom). And, you can use Zoom together with VoiceOver.

Set up Zoom

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Zoom, then turn on Zoom.

2. Adjust any of the following:

- *Follow Focus*: Track your selections, the text insertion point, and your typing.
- *Smart Typing*: Switch to Window Zoom when a keyboard appears.
- *Keyboard Shortcuts*: Control Zoom using shortcuts on an external keyboard.
- *Zoom Controller*: Turn the controller on, set controller actions, and adjust the color and opacity.
- *Zoom Region*: Choose Full Screen Zoom or Window Zoom.
- *Zoom Filter*: Choose None, Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.
- *Maximum Zoom Level*: Drag the slider to adjust the level.

3. If you use iPhone with a pointer device, you can also set the following below Pointer Control:

- *Zoom Pan*: Choose Continuous, Centered, or Edges to set how the screen image moves with the pointer.
- *Adjust Size with Zoom*: Allow the pointer to scale with zoom.

4. To add Zoom to Accessibility Shortcut, go to Settings > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then tap Zoom.

Use Zoom

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers or [use accessibility shortcuts](#) to turn on Zoom.

2. To see more of the screen, do any of the following:

- *Adjust the magnification*: Double-tap the screen with three fingers (without lifting your fingers after the second tap), then drag up or down. Or triple-tap with three fingers, then drag the Zoom Level slider.
- *Move the Zoom lens*: (Window Zoom) Drag the handle at the bottom of the Zoom lens.
- *Pan to another area*: (Full Screen Zoom) Drag the screen with three fingers.

3. To adjust the settings with the Zoom menu, triple-tap with three fingers, then adjust any of the following:

- *Choose Region*: Choose Full Screen Zoom or Window Zoom.
- *Resize Lens*: (Window Zoom) Tap Resize Lens, then drag any of the round handles that appear.
- *Choose Filter*: Choose Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.
- *Show Controller*: Show the Zoom Controller.

4. To use the Zoom Controller, do any of the following:

- *Show the Zoom menu:* Tap the controller.
- *Zoom in or out:* Double-tap the controller.
- *Pan:* When zoomed in, drag the controller.

While using Zoom with Magic Keyboard, the Zoom region follows the insertion point, keeping it in the center of the display. See [Use Magic Keyboard with iPhone](#).

To turn off Zoom, double-tap the screen with three fingers or [use accessibility shortcuts](#).

On an iPhone with Display Zoom, you can see larger onscreen controls. Go to Settings > Display & Brightness > View, then turn on Display Zoom.

Magnify nearby objects with Magnifier on iPhone

Use your iPhone as a magnifying glass to zoom in on objects near you.



Set up Magnifier





1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Magnifier.



2. Turn on Magnifier.

This adds Magnifier as an accessibility shortcut.

Turn on Magnifier and adjust the image

1. Use [accessibility shortcuts](#) to turn on Magnifier.
2. To adjust the zoom level, drag the zoom control slider left or right.
3. To show more controls, drag the grabber up.
4. Adjust the image using any of the following controls:




- *Brightness*: Tap .
- *Contrast*: Tap .
- *Color filters*: Tap .
- *Flashlight*: Tap .

 **Tip:** To organize the controls you use most often, tap , then reorder the controls or tap Filter Customization to choose your favorite filters.

Freeze the frame

You can freeze one or more frames and review them.

Note: Freeze frames aren't saved to Photos.

1. Tap .
2. To freeze more frames, tap , reposition the camera, then tap .
3. To review the freeze frames, tap View, then tap the frames you want to see.
4. To return to the live lens, tap End.


To turn off Magnifier, do the following:

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen.
- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press the Home button.

Adjust the display and text size on iPhone

If you have color blindness or other vision challenges, you can customize the display settings to make the screen easier to see.

Use display accommodations

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Adjust any of the following:

- *Bold Text*: Display the text in boldface characters.
- *Larger Text*: Turn on Larger Accessibility Sizes, then adjust the text size using the Font Size slider.

This setting adjusts to your preferred text size in apps that support Dynamic Type, such as Settings, Calendar, Contacts, Mail, Messages, and Notes.

- *Button Shapes*: This setting underlines text you can tap.
- *On/Off Labels*: This setting indicates switches turned on with "1" and switches turned off with "0".
- *Reduce Transparency*: This setting reduces the transparency and blurs on some backgrounds.
- *Increase Contrast*: This setting improves the contrast and legibility by altering color and text styling.

Apps that support Dynamic Type—such as Settings, Calendar, Contacts, Mail, Messages, and Notes—adjust to your preferred text size.

- *Differentiate Without Color*: This setting replaces user interface items that rely on color to convey information with alternatives.
- *Smart Invert or Classic Invert*: Smart Invert Colors reverses the colors of the display, except for images, media, and some apps that use dark color styles.
- *Color Filters*: Tap a filter to apply it. To adjust the intensity or hue, drag the sliders.
- *Reduce White Point*: This setting reduces the intensity of bright colors.
- *Auto-Brightness*: This setting automatically adjusts the screen brightness for current light conditions using the built-in ambient light sensor.


You can also apply these effects to only the contents of the zoom window. See [Zoom in on the iPhone screen](#).

Reduce or stop the motion of screen elements on iPhone

If you have sensitivity to motion effects or screen movement on your iPhone, you can stop or reduce the movement of some screen elements, such as:

- Parallax effect of wallpaper, apps, and alerts
- Screen transitions

- Siri animations
 - Typing autocompletion
 - Animated effects in Messages
-

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Motion.


2. Turn on or off any of the following controls:

- *Reduce Motion*: This setting reduces the motion of the user interface, including the parallax effect of icons.
 - *Prefer Cross-Fade Transitions*: This setting reduces the motion of user interface controls that slide in and out when appearing and disappearing.
 - *Auto-Play Message Effects*: This setting allows the Messages app to automatically play full-screen effects. If you turn this setting off, you can still manually play effects by tapping Replay below the message bubble.
 - *Auto-Play Video Previews*: This setting allows apps such as the App Store to automatically play video previews.
-

Hear iPhone speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Even if VoiceOver is turned off, you can have iPhone speak selected text or the entire screen. iPhone can also provide feedback and speak text corrections and suggestions as you type.

Change the speech settings

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Spoken Content.

2. Adjust any of the following:

- *Speak Selection*: To hear text you selected, tap the Speak button.
- *Speak Screen*: To hear the entire screen, swipe down with two fingers from the top of the screen.
- *Speech Controller*: Show the controller for quick access to Speak Screen and Speak on Touch.
- *Highlight Content*: iPhone can highlight words, sentences, or both as they're spoken. You can change the highlight color and style.
- *Typing Feedback*: You can configure typing feedback for the onscreen and external keyboards and choose to have iPhone speak each character, entire words, auto-corrections, auto-capitalizations, and typing predictions.

To hear typing predictions, you also need to go to Settings > General > Keyboards, then turn on Predictive.

- *Voices*: Choose a voice and dialect.
- *Speaking Rate*: Drag the slider.
- *Pronunciations*: Dictate or spell out how you want certain phrases to be spoken.

Hear iPhone speak


 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Speak screen." [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

Or do any of the following:

- *Hear selected text*: Select the text, then tap Speak.
- *Hear the entire screen*: Swipe down with two fingers from the top of the screen. Use the controls that appear to pause speaking or adjust the rate.
- *Hear typing feedback*: Start typing. To hear typing predictions (when turned on), touch and hold each word.

Hear audio descriptions for video content on iPhone

If you have video content that includes audio descriptions of scenes, iPhone can play the descriptions for you.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio Descriptions.
2. Turn on Audio Descriptions.

Touch


Use AssistiveTouch on iPhone

AssistiveTouch helps you use iPhone if you have difficulty touching the screen or pressing the buttons. You can use AssistiveTouch without any accessory to perform actions or gestures that are difficult for you. You can also use a compatible adaptive accessory (such as a joystick) together with AssistiveTouch to control iPhone.




With AssistiveTouch, you can use a simple tap (or the equivalent on your accessory) to perform actions such as the following:


- Open the AssistiveTouch menu
- Go to the Home Screen
- Double-tap
- Perform multifinger gestures
- Perform scroll gestures
- Summon Siri
- Access Control Center, notifications, the Lock Screen, or the App Switcher
- Adjust the volume on iPhone
- Shake iPhone
- Take a screenshot
- Use 3D Touch (on supported iPhone models)
- Use Apple Pay
- Use Emergency SOS
- Speak screen
- Adjust dwell settings
- Restart iPhone

Set up AssistiveTouch

 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: “Turn on AssistiveTouch” or “Turn off AssistiveTouch.” [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)


Or do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Turn on AssistiveTouch.
3. To customize AssistiveTouch, tap any of the following:
 - *Customize Top Level Menu:* Tap an icon to change its action. Tap  or  to change the number of icons in the menu. The menu can have up to eight icons.
 - *Single-Tap, Double-Tap, Long Press, or 3D Touch:* Assign custom actions that run when you interact with the menu button. 3D Touch is available only on supported iPhone models.
 - *Create New Gesture:* Add your favorite gestures.
 - *Idle Opacity:* Adjust the visibility of the menu button when not in use.
 - *Confirm with AssistiveTouch:* On an iPhone with Face ID, confirm payments with Face ID by using AssistiveTouch instead of double-clicking the side button.

 **Tip:** To turn AssistiveTouch on or off quickly, [triple-click the side button](#) (on an iPhone with Face ID) or [triple-click the Home button](#) (on other iPhone models).

Add a pointer device

You can connect Bluetooth and USB assistive pointer devices, such as trackpads, joysticks, and mouse devices.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Turn on AssistiveTouch.

3. Below Pointer Devices, tap any of the following:

- *Devices*: Pair or unpair devices and customize buttons.
- *Mouse Keys*: Allow the AssistiveTouch pointer to be controlled using the keyboard number pad.
- *Pointer Style*: Adjust the size, color, and auto-hide settings.
- *Show Onscreen Keyboard*: Display the onscreen keyboard.
- *Always Show Menu*: Show the AssistiveTouch menu when a pointer device is connected.
- *Tracking speed*: Drag the slider to adjust the speed.
- *Drag Lock*: Turn on to enable dragging.
- *Zoom Pan*: Choose Continuous, Centered, or Edges.
- *Dwell Control*: Turn on to perform a dwell action when the cursor is held still. To adjust the amount of time needed to initiate a dwell action, tap **-** or **+**.
- *Fallback Action*: Turn on to revert the dwell action to a selected action—Tap or Pause Dwell—after performing an operation.
- *Movement Tolerance*: Adjust the distance you can move while dwelling on an item.
- *Hot Corners*: Perform a selected action—such as take a screenshot, open Control Center, summon Siri, scroll, or use a shortcut—when the cursor dwells in a corner of the screen.

Move the AssistiveTouch menu button

Drag the menu button to a new location on the screen.

Use AssistiveTouch

Tap the menu button, then choose an action or gesture.


For a multifinger gesture, do the following:

- *Pinch*: Tap Custom, then tap Pinch. When the pinch circles appear, touch anywhere on the screen to move the pinch circles, then drag them in or out to perform a pinch gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.
- *Multifinger swipe or drag*: Tap Device > More > Gestures, then tap the number of digits needed for the gesture. When the circles appear on the screen, swipe or drag in the direction required by the gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.

To return to the previous menu, tap the arrow in the center of the menu. To exit the menu without performing a gesture: Tap anywhere outside the menu.

Create custom gestures

You can add your favorite gestures (such as touch and hold or two-finger rotation) to the AssistiveTouch menu. You can even create several gestures with different degrees of rotation.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Create New Gesture.
2. Perform your gesture on the recording screen. For example:
 - *Touch-and-hold gesture*: Touch and hold your finger in one spot until the recording progress bar reaches halfway, then lift your finger. Be careful not to move your finger while recording, or the gesture will be recorded as a drag.
 - *Two-finger rotation gesture*: Rotate two fingers on the iPhone screen around a point between them. (You can do this with a single finger or stylus—just create each arc separately, one after the other.)

If you record a sequence of taps or drag gestures, they're all played back at the same time. For example, using one finger or a stylus to record four separate, sequential taps at four locations on the screen creates a simultaneous four-finger tap.

3. If your gesture doesn't turn out quite right, tap Cancel, then try again.
4. When you're satisfied with your gesture, tap Save, then name the gesture.

To use your custom gesture, tap the AssistiveTouch menu button, tap Custom, then choose the gesture. When the blue circles representing your gesture appear, drag them to where you want to use the gesture, then release.


Adjust touch settings on iPhone

If you have difficulty using the touchscreen or buttons, you can change how iPhone responds to your touch.

Turn on and use Reachability

When you use an iPhone that supports Reachability in Portrait orientation, you can bring items at the top of the screen down to the lower half of the screen.




1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch, then turn on Reachability.
2. To bring the top of the screen into reach, do the following:
 - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe down on the bottom edge of the screen.
 - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Lightly double-tap the Home button.

To reset the screen, tap the top of the screen.


Adjust Haptic Touch settings

You can adjust the time needed for touch-and-hold gestures.




1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > Haptic Touch, then choose Fast or Slow.
 2. Test your new settings on the image at the bottom of the screen.
-



Adjust 3D Touch settings



On an iPhone with 3D Touch, you can control the pressure needed to activate 3D Touch.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > 3D & Haptic Touch, then adjust any of the following:
 - *3D Touch*: Turn on or off.
 - *3D Touch Sensitivity*: Choose the pressure needed to activate 3D Touch—Light, Medium, or Firm.
 - *Touch Duration*: Choose the time it takes to reveal content previews, actions, and contextual menus—Fast or Slow.
 2. Test your new settings on the image at the bottom of the screen.
-


Use touch accommodations

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > Touch Accommodations.
2. You can configure iPhone to do any of the following:
 - *Respond to touches of a certain duration*: Turn on Hold Duration, then tap  or  to adjust the duration (the default is 0.10 seconds).


To perform swipe gestures without waiting for the specified hold duration, tap Swipe Gestures, then turn on Swipe Gestures. You can choose the amount of required movement before a swipe gesture begins.
 - *Ignore multiple touches*: Turn on Ignore Repeat, then tap  or  to adjust the amount of time allowed between multiple touches. Then, if you touch the screen several times quickly, iPhone treats the touches as one.
 - *Respond to the first or last place you touch*: Choose Use Initial Touch Location or Use Final Touch Location.

If you choose Use Initial Touch Location, iPhone uses the location of your first tap—when you tap an app on the Home Screen, for example. If you choose Use Final Touch Location, iPhone registers the tap where you lift your finger. iPhone responds to a tap when you lift your finger within a certain period of time. Tap  or  to adjust the timing. Your device can respond to other gestures, such as a drag gesture, if you wait longer than the gesture delay.


Turn off Tap to Wake

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Tap to Wake.

Turn off Shake to Undo




If you tend to shake iPhone by accident, go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Shake to Undo.

Turn off vibrations

To prevent vibrations, including those for emergency alerts, go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Vibration.

Route audio calls


You can automatically route the audio of phone or FaceTime calls to your headphones, speaker, or hearing devices.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > Call Audio Routing.
2. Choose an audio destination for calls.
3. To have iPhone answer calls automatically, tap Auto-Answer Calls, turn on Auto-Answer Calls, then tap  or  to set the duration of time before the call is answered.

During a call, you can switch the audio routing from your hearing aid to the iPhone speaker by removing the hearing aid from your ear. See [Use hearing devices with iPhone](#).

Tap the back of iPhone to perform actions

You can double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPhone to perform certain actions—such as scroll up or down, take a screenshot, open Control Center, activate a shortcut in the Shortcuts app, or turn on an accessibility feature.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap.
 2. Choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then choose an action.
-

Physical and Motor

Change Face ID and attention settings on iPhone

On an iPhone with Face ID, you can adjust Face ID and attention settings if you have physical or vision limitations.

Set up Face ID with Accessibility Options

By default, setting up Face ID requires you to gently move your head in a circle to show all the angles of your face. If you can't perform the full range of head motion, you can still set up Face ID without moving your head.

1. Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode.


2. Position your face within the frame, then tap Accessibility Options.

Face ID is still secure but requires more consistency in how you look at iPhone.

Change attention settings

For additional security, Face ID is *attention aware*. It unlocks iPhone only when your eyes are open and looking at the screen. iPhone can also reveal notifications and messages, keep the screen lit when you're reading, or lower the volume of alerts.

If you don't want iPhone to check for your attention, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Turn on or off any of the following:
 - Require Attention for Face ID
 - Attention Aware Features
 - Haptic on Successful Authentication

These settings are turned off by default if you turn on VoiceOver when you first set up iPhone.

Note: Requiring attention makes Face ID more secure.

Switch Control


Set up Switch Control on iPhone

If you have physical difficulties, you can use Switch Control to operate iPhone using one or more switches. With switches, you can select, tap, drag, type, and even draw freehand. You use a switch to select an item or location on the screen, then use the same (or a different) switch to choose an action.

Add a switch

You can use any of the following sources as a switch:

- *An external adaptive switch:* Choose a Bluetooth switch or Made For iPhone (MFi) switch that plugs into the Lightning connector on iPhone.
- *The iPhone screen:* Tap the screen to trigger the switch.
- *The iPhone front camera:* Move your head left or right while facing the camera to trigger the switch.


Before you add an external switch, connect it to iPhone, following the instructions that came with the switch. If the switch connects using Bluetooth, pair it with iPhone—turn on the switch, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, tap the name of the switch, then follow the onscreen instructions.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switches.
2. Tap Add New Switch, then choose a source.
3. Assign an action to the switch.

To ensure Switch Control functions correctly, you must assign a switch to the Select Item action and another switch to the Move to Next Item action.

Choose a scanning style and customize Switch Control

You can adjust the behavior of Switch Control in a variety of ways, to suit your specific needs and style.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control.
2. Tap Scanning Style, then choose one of the following:
 - *Auto Scanning*: The focus automatically moves to the next item after a specified duration.
 - *Manual Scanning*: You trigger a switch to move the focus to the next item (requires multiple switches).
 - *Single Switch Step Scanning*: You trigger a switch to move the focus to the next item; if no action is taken with a specified duration, the item with the focus is automatically activated.


3. Customize Switch Control by setting options such as the following:

- *Switches*: Add switches and specify their function.
- *Recipes*: Create, edit, and choose recipes to temporarily assign special actions to switches.
- *Auto Scanning Time*: Adjust the item scanning speed.
- *Pause on First Item*: Set scanning to pause on the first item in a group.
- *Loops*: Choose how many times to cycle through the screen before hiding Switch Control.
- *Move Repeat*: Set the delay before moving to the previous or next item while a switch is pressed.
- *Long Press*: Set whether a different action occurs when you press and hold a switch, and how long to wait before performing that action.
- *Tap Behavior*: Choose a tap behavior and set the interval for performing a second switch action to show the Scanner Menu.
- *Focused Item After Tap*: Choose whether Switch Control resumes scanning at an item you tap or from the beginning.
- *Hold Duration*: Set whether and how long you need to hold a switch down before it's accepted as a switch action.
- *Ignore Repeat*: Ignore accidental repeated switch triggers.
- *Gliding Cursor*: Adjust the point scanning style and speed.
- *Head Tracking*: Adjust settings for head tracking (on an iPhone with Face ID) and assign actions to facial expressions.
- *Sound Effects*: Turn on sound effects.
- *Speech*: Speak items as they're scanned.
- *Menu Items*: Choose the actions shown in the Scanner Menu and the order in which they appear.
- *Group Items*: Group items for faster navigation.
- *Large Cursor*: Make the selection cursor larger.
- *Cursor Color*: Choose a different color.
- *Saved Gestures*: Create and save custom gestures to the Scanner Menu.
- *Confirm with Switch Control*: On an iPhone with Face ID, confirm payments with Face ID by using Switch Control instead of double-clicking the side button.

Turn Switch Control on or off

Important: Switch Control changes the gestures you use to control iPhone.

To turn Switch Control on or off, use any of the following methods:

- Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control.
 - [Triple-click the side button](#) (on an iPhone with Face ID).
 - [Triple-click the Home button](#) (on an iPhone with a Home button).
 - [Use Control Center](#).
-

Use Switch Control on iPhone

With Switch Control, you can use the following methods to select an item on the screen:

- *Item scanning:* The focus moves (automatically or manually) from one item to the next until you select an item; this is the default scanning method.
- *Point scanning:* You select an item on the screen by pinpointing it with scanning crosshairs.
- *Head tracking:* (on an iPhone with Face ID) You move your head to control a pointer on the screen. You can also use facial expressions to perform actions.

After you select an item, you can choose an action (for example, tap, drag, or pinch) in the Scanner Menu.

Use item scanning

With item scanning, the focus sequentially moves from one item to the next item on the screen.

1. If you use Auto Scanning, watch or listen as the focus moves. If you use Manual Scanning, trigger your Move to Next Item action to move the focus.
2. When the focus surrounds the item you want, trigger your Select Item switch.

3. In the Scanner Menu, choose an action such as the following:

- Tap
- Gestures
- Scroll
- Media Controls
- More (the dots at the bottom of the menu) for more options
- Home (to return to the Home Screen)
- Device (for other hardware actions)
- Settings (to adjust Switch Control behavior)

The available actions in the Scanner Menu depend on the selected item.

To dismiss the Scanner menu without choosing an action, trigger your switch while the original item is highlighted and all the icons in the Scanner Menu are dimmed.

Use point scanning


With point scanning, you select an item on the screen by pinpointing it with scanning crosshairs.

1. Use item scanning to select an item.
2. In the Scanner Menu, choose Gliding Cursor.
3. To position the vertical crosshair, do the following:
 - Trigger your Select Item switch when the wide vertical band is over the item you want.
 - Trigger your Select Item switch again when the fine vertical line is over the item.
4. Repeat to position the horizontal crosshair.
5. Choose an action from the Scanner Menu.

To return to item scanning, choose Item Mode in the Scanner Menu.

Use head tracking

On an iPhone with Face ID, you can move your head to control a pointer on the screen. You can also use facial expressions to perform actions.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control > Head Tracking.


2. Turn on Head Tracking, then do any of the following:

- *Assign actions to facial expressions:* Choose actions to perform when you smile, open your mouth, stick out your tongue, or raise your eyebrows.
 - *Choose how the pointer tracks your head movement:* Tap Tracking Mode, then choose With Face, When Facing Screen Edges, or Relative to Head.
 - *Adjust the pointer speed:* Tap **-** or **+**.
-

Control iPhone with your voice

You can control iPhone with just your voice. You can edit text as you dictate, navigate with voice commands and gestures, and see numbers or names next to screen elements.

Set up Voice Control

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Voice Control.


2. Tap Set Up Voice Control.

3. Set options such as the following:

- *Language:* Set the language and download languages for offline use.
 - *Customize Commands:* View the available commands and create new commands.
 - *Vocabulary:* Teach Voice Control new words.
 - *Show Confirmation:* When Voice Control recognizes a command, a visual confirmation appears at the top of the screen.
 - *Play Sound:* When Voice Control recognizes a command, an audible sound is played.
 - *Show Hints:* See command suggestions and hints.
 - *Overlay:* Display numbers, names, or a grid over screen elements.
 - *Attention Aware:* On an iPhone with Face ID, Voice Control wakes up when you look at your iPhone and goes to sleep when you look away.
-

Turn Voice Control on or off


After you set up Voice Control, you can turn it on or off quickly by using any of the following methods:

- Summon Siri and say “Turn on Voice Control” or “Turn off Voice Control.”
- Add Voice Control to Accessibility Shortcuts—go to Settings  > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then tap Voice Control.

Learn Voice Control commands

When Voice Control is turned on, you can say commands such as the following:

- "Open Control Center"
- "Go home"
- "Tap *item name*"
- "Open *app name*"
- "Take screenshot"
- "Turn up volume"

To learn more Voice Control commands, go to Settings  > Accessibility > Voice Control > Customize Commands, then tap a category.

Use the screen overlay

For faster interactions, navigate iPhone with a screen overlay that shows item names, numbers, or a grid.

- *Item names*: Say "Show names" or "Show names continuously," then say "Tap *item name*."
- *Numbers*: Say "Show numbers" or "Show numbers continuously," then say the number next to the item you want.
- *Grid*: To interact with a screen location not represented by an item name or number, say "Show grid" or "Show grid continuously," then say the number closest to the location you want. To zoom in on the location, say another number on the smaller grid.

To turn off the overlay, say "Hide names," "Hide numbers," or "Hide grid."

Adjust settings for the side or Home button on iPhone

You can adjust accessibility settings for the side button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Home button (on other iPhone models).

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility, then tap Side Button (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Home Button (on other iPhone models).

2. Set any of the following:

- *Click Speed*: Choose the speed required to double-click or triple-click the button—Default, Slow, or Slowest.
- *Press and Hold to Speak*: Choose whether Siri responds when you press and hold the button.
- *Rest Finger to Open*: On an iPhone with Touch ID, you can unlock iPhone by resting your finger on the button.

On an iPhone with Face ID, you can also [use AssistiveTouch](#) or [use Switch Control](#) to confirm payments with Face ID instead of double-clicking the top button.

Use buttons on the Apple TV Remote on iPhone

On the Apple TV Remote on iPhone, you can use buttons instead of swipe gestures.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Apple TV Remote, then turn on Directional Buttons.

Change the pointer appearance when using a mouse or trackpad with iPhone

If you [use a mouse or trackpad](#) with iPhone, you can change the appearance of the pointer by adjusting its color, shape, size, scrolling speed, and more.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Pointer Control, then adjust any of the following:

- Increase Contrast
- Automatically Hide Pointer
- Color
- Pointer size
- Scrolling Speed

To customize the buttons of the pointing device, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Devices.


See [Use VoiceOver on iPhone with a pointer device](#) and [Zoom in on the iPhone screen](#).

Adjust the onscreen and external keyboard settings on iPhone

You can adjust the onscreen (software) keyboard on iPhone. If you use an external (hardware) keyboard with iPhone, you can customize keyboard shortcuts and change settings such as the key repeat rate.

Set the onscreen keyboard to display only uppercase letters

If you have difficulty seeing the onscreen keyboard, you can set it to display only uppercase letters.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Keyboards, then turn off Show Lowercase Keys.


Type on a larger onscreen keyboard

Rotate iPhone to landscape orientation to use a larger keyboard for typing in many apps, including Mail, Safari, Messages, Notes, and Contacts.

For information about other ways to adjust the onscreen keyboard, see [Type with one hand](#) and [Set typing options](#).

Control iPhone with an external keyboard

If you have difficulty using the touchscreen, you can control your iPhone using shortcuts on [Magic Keyboard](#) (available separately).

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Keyboards, tap Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access.
2. Control your iPhone using keyboard shortcuts.

Action	Shortcut
Go to the next item	Tab
Go to the previous item	Shift-Tab
Activate the selected item	Space bar
Go to the Home Screen	Command-H
Open the App Switcher	Tab-A
Open Control Center	Tab-C
Open Notification Center	Tab-N
Show Help	Tab-H

3. To customize the keyboard shortcuts, tap Commands.

4. To customize the appearance of the focus, tap any of the following:

- Auto-Hide
 - Increase Size
 - High Contrast
 - Color
-

Change how the keys respond on an external keyboard


If you have difficulty using an external keyboard, you can adjust the settings.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Keyboards, then tap any of the following:

- *Key Repeat*: You can adjust the repeat interval and delay.
 - *Sticky Keys*: Use Sticky Keys to press and hold modifier keys, such as Command and Option, as you press another key.
 - *Slow Keys*: Use Slow Keys to adjust the time between when a key is pressed and when it's activated.
-

Adjust the accessibility settings for AirPods Pro on iPhone

If you have AirPods Pro, you can adjust the accessibility settings to suit your motor or hearing needs.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > AirPods.
 2. Set any of the following options:
 - *Press Speed*: Adjust how quickly you must press two or three times before an action occurs.
 - *Press and Hold Duration*: Adjust the duration required to press and hold on your AirPods.
 - *Noise Cancellation with One AirPods*: Turn on noise cancellation even when you're using only one of your AirPods.
 - *Follow iPhone*: Turn on spatial audio so surround sound (available with supported media content) seems to come from your iPhone, even as you turn your head or move your device.
 3. For more options—such as Headphone Accommodations—tap Audio Accessibility Settings.
-

Hearing

Use hearing devices with iPhone

You can use Made for iPhone (MFi) hearing aids or sound processors with iPhone and adjust their settings.

Pair a hearing device with iPhone


If your hearing devices aren't listed in Settings  > Accessibility > Hearing Devices, you need to pair them with iPhone.

1. Open the battery doors on your hearing devices.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then make sure Bluetooth is turned on.
3. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.
4. Close the battery doors on your hearing devices.
5. When their names appear below MFi Hearing Devices (this could take a minute), tap the names and respond to the pairing requests.

Pairing can take as long as 60 seconds—don't try to stream audio or otherwise use the hearing devices until pairing is finished. When pairing is finished, you hear a series of beeps and a tone, and a checkmark appears next to the hearing devices in the Devices list.

You need to pair your devices only once (and your audiologist might do it for you). After that, your hearing devices automatically reconnect to iPhone whenever they turn on.

Adjust the settings and view the status of your hearing devices

- *In Settings:* Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices.
- *Using accessibility shortcuts:* See [Use accessibility shortcuts on iPhone](#).

- *On the Lock Screen:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices, then turn on Control on Lock Screen. From the Lock Screen, you can do the following:
 - Check battery status.
 - Adjust ambient microphone volume and equalization.
 - Choose which hearing device (left, right, or both) receives streaming audio.
 - Control Live Listen.
 - Choose whether call audio and media audio are routed to the hearing device.
 - Choose to play ringtones through the hearing device.
-

Use your hearing devices with more than one device


If you pair your hearing devices with more than one device (both iPhone and iPad, for example), the connection for your hearing devices automatically switches from one to the other when you do something that generates audio on the other device, or when you receive a phone call on iPhone.

Changes you make to hearing device settings on one device are automatically sent to your other devices.

1. Sign in with your Apple ID on all the devices.
 2. Connect all the devices to the same Wi-Fi network.
-

Turn on Hearing Aid Compatibility

Hearing Aid Compatibility may reduce interference and improve audio quality with some hearing aid models.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.
2. Turn on Hearing Aid Compatibility.

The FCC hearing aid compatibility rules require that certain phones be tested and rated under the American National Standard Institute (ANSI) C63.19 hearing aid compatibility standards.

The ANSI standard for hearing aid compatibility contains two types of ratings:

- *M:* For reduced radio-frequency interference to enable acoustic coupling with hearing aids that don't operate in telecoil mode
- *T:* For inductive coupling with hearing aids operating in telecoil mode

These ratings are given on a scale from one to four, where four is the most compatible. A phone is considered hearing aid compatible under the FCC requirements if it's rated M3 or M4 for acoustic coupling and T3 or T4 for inductive coupling.

For iPhone hearing aid compatibility ratings, see the Apple Support article [About Hearing Aid Compatibility \(HAC\) requirements for iPhone](#).

Hearing aid compatibility ratings aren't a guarantee that a particular hearing aid works well with a particular phone. Some hearing aids might work well with phones that do not meet the FCC requirements for hearing aid compatibility. To ensure that a particular hearing aid works well with a particular phone, use them together before purchasing.

This phone has been tested and rated for use with hearing aids for some of the wireless technologies it uses. However, there may be some newer wireless technologies used in this phone that have not been tested yet for use with hearing aids. It is important to try the different features of this phone thoroughly and in different locations, using your hearing aid or cochlear implant, to determine if you hear any interfering noise. Consult your service provider or the manufacturer of this phone for information about hearing aid compatibility. If you have questions about return or exchange policies, consult your service provider or phone retailer.

Stream audio from iPhone to your hearing devices

Stream audio from iPhone and its apps to your hearing devices. You can even use Live Listen to stream sound from the microphone to your Made For iPhone (MFi) hearing devices or AirPods.


Stream audio to your hearing devices



To stream audio from Phone, Siri, Music, Apple TV, and more, see [Set up and listen to Bluetooth headphones](#).

You can also automatically [route audio calls](#) to a hearing device.

Use iPhone as a remote microphone with Live Listen

Stream sound from the microphone on iPhone to your Made For iPhone (MFi) hearing devices or AirPods. This can help you hear better in some situations—for example, when having a conversation in a noisy environment.

1. If you're using AirPods, place them in your ears.
2. Turn on Live Listen with one of the following methods:
 - Open Control Center, tap , tap your hearing device or AirPods, then turn on Live Listen.


(If you don't see , add it to Control Center—go to Settings  > Control Center, then choose Hearing.
 - [Triple-click the side button](#) (on an iPhone with Face ID) or [triple-click the Home button](#) (on other iPhone models), tap Hearing Devices, then tap Live Listen.
3. Position iPhone near the sound source.

Recognize sounds using iPhone

Your iPhone can continuously listen for certain sounds—such as a crying baby, doorbell, or siren—and notify you when it recognizes these sounds.

Note: Don't rely on your iPhone to recognize sounds in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, in high-risk or emergency situations, or for navigation.

Set up Sound Recognition

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Sound Recognition, then turn on Sound Recognition.
2. Tap Sounds, then turn on the sounds you want iPhone to recognize.

 **Tip:** To quickly turn Sound Recognition on or off, [use Control Center](#).

Set up and use RTT and TTY on iPhone

If you have hearing or speech difficulties, you can communicate by telephone using Teletype (TTY) or real-time text (RTT)—protocols that transmit text as you type and allow the recipient to read the message right away. RTT is a more advanced protocol that transmits audio as you type text.

iPhone provides built-in Software RTT and TTY from the Phone app—it requires no additional devices. If you turn on Software RTT/TTY, iPhone defaults to the RTT protocol whenever it's supported by the carrier.

iPhone also supports Hardware TTY, so you can connect iPhone to an external TTY device with the iPhone TTY Adapter (sold separately in many regions).

Important: RTT and TTY aren't supported by all carriers or in all countries or regions. RTT and TTY functionality depends on your carrier and network environment. When making an emergency call in the U.S., iPhone sends special characters or tones to alert the operator. The operator's ability to receive or respond to these tones can vary depending on your location. Apple doesn't guarantee that the operator will be able to receive or respond to an RTT or TTY call.

Set up RTT and TTY

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility.

2. Tap RTT/TTY or TTY, then do any of the following:

- If your iPhone has Dual SIM, choose a line.
- Turn on Software RTT/TTY or Software TTY.
- Tap Relay Number, then enter the phone number to use for relay calls using Software RTT/TTY.
- Turn on Send Immediately to send each character as you type. Turn off to complete messages before sending.
- Turn on Answer All Calls as RTT/TTY.
- Turn on Hardware TTY.

When RTT or TTY is turned on,  appears in the status bar at the top of the screen.

Connect iPhone to an external TTY device

If you turned on Hardware TTY in Settings, connect iPhone to your TTY device using the iPhone TTY Adapter. If Software TTY is also turned on, incoming calls default to Hardware TTY. For information about using a particular TTY device, see the documentation that came with it.

Start an RTT or TTY call


1. In the Phone app, choose a contact, then tap the phone number.
2. Choose RTT/TTY Call or RTT/TTY Relay Call.
3. Wait for the call to connect, then tap RTT/TTY.

iPhone defaults to the RTT protocol whenever it's supported by the carrier.

If you haven't turned RTT on and you receive an incoming RTT call, tap the RTT button to answer the call with RTT.

Type text during an RTT or TTY call


1. Enter your message in the text field.


If you turned on Send Immediately in Settings, your recipient sees each character as you type. Otherwise, tap  to send the message.

2. To also transmit audio, tap .
-

Review the transcript of a Software RTT or TTY call

1. In the Phone app, tap Recents.

RTT and TTY calls have  next to them.


2. Next to the call you want to review, tap .

Note: Continuity features aren't available for RTT and TTY support. Standard voice call rates apply for both Software RTT/TTY and Hardware TTY calls.

Adjust audio and visual settings on iPhone


You can adjust audio and visual accessibility settings to suit your hearing needs. For example, set mono audio, volume balance, phone noise cancellation, LED Flash for Alerts, and headphone accommodations.

Adjust the volume balance and mono audio

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio/Visual.
2. Adjust any of the following:
 - *Mono Audio:* Combine the left and right channels into a mono signal played on both channels.
 - *Balance:* Drag the Left Right Stereo Balance slider.


Control noise cancellation on iPhone


Noise cancellation reduces ambient background noise on phone calls when you're holding the receiver to your ear.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio/Visual.
2. Turn Phone Noise Cancellation on or off.


Flash the LED for alerts


If you can't hear the sounds that announce incoming calls and other alerts, iPhone can flash its LED (next to the camera lens on the back of iPhone). The LED flashes only if iPhone is locked.

 **Tip:** LED Flash for Alerts is a useful feature for anyone who might miss the tones associated with calls and other alerts in a noisy environment.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio/Visual, then turn on LED Flash for Alerts.
2. To prevent LED flashes when iPhone is in silent mode, turn off Flash on Silent.

Set headphone accommodations

With supported Apple and Beats headphones, you can amplify soft sounds and adjust certain frequencies for your hearing. These adjustments help music, movies, phone calls, and podcasts sound more crisp and clear. If you have an audiogram in the Health app , you can use the audiogram to customize your audio.


1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio/Visual > Headphone Accommodations, then turn on Headphone Accommodations.
 2. Tap Custom Audio Setup, then follow the onscreen instructions. Or manually set any of the following:
 - *Tune Audio For*: Choose Balanced Tone, Vocal Range, or Brightness.
 - *Level*: Choose Slight, Moderate, or Strong amplification of soft sounds.
 - *Phone*: Apply these audio settings to phone calls.
 - *Media*: Apply these audio settings to media playback.
 3. To preview your audio settings, tap Play Sample.
-

Display subtitles and captions for videos and HomePod announcements on iPhone


When you play video content in a supported app, you can turn on subtitles and closed captions (if available). iPhone usually shows standard subtitles and captions, but you can also choose special accessible captions—such as subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing (SDH)—if available.

iPhone can also display transcriptions of announcements made through HomePod.

Turn on subtitles and captions in the Apple TV app

1. While playing video content, tap .
 2. Choose from the list of available subtitles and captions.
-


Customize the subtitles and captions in supported video apps

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Subtitles & Captioning.
2. If you prefer closed captioning or subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing when available, turn on Closed Captions + SDH.

3. Tap Style, then choose an existing caption style or create a new style based on the following:

- Font, size, and color
 - Background color and opacity
 - Text opacity, edge style, and highlight
-

Show transcriptions for announcements on HomePod

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Subtitles & Captioning, then turn on Show Transcriptions.


General

Use Guided Access on iPhone

Guided Access helps you stay focused on a task by temporarily restricting iPhone to a single app, and allowing you to control which app features are available. You can do any of the following:

- Disable areas of the screen that aren't relevant to a task, or areas where an accidental gesture might cause a distraction
 - Disable the iPhone hardware buttons
 - Limit how long someone can use the app
-

Set up Guided Access

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Guided Access, then turn on Guided Access.

2. Adjust any of the following:

- *Passcode Settings*: Tap Set Guided Access Passcode, then enter a passcode.

You can also turn on Face ID (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID (on an iPhone with a Home button) as a way to end a Guided Access session.

- *Time Limits*: Play a sound or speak the time remaining before a Guided Access session ends.
 - *Accessibility Shortcut*: Turn the shortcut on or off during Guided Access sessions.
 - *Display Auto-Lock*: Set how long it takes iPhone to automatically lock during a Guided Access session.
-

Start a Guided Access session

1. Open the app you want to use.
 2. Turn on Guided Access using one of the following methods:
 - Ask Siri. Say something like: "Turn on Guided Access." [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)
 - [Use accessibility shortcuts.](#)
 3. Circle any areas of the screen you want to disable. Drag the mask into position or use the handles to adjust its size.
 4. Tap Options, then turn on or off any of the following:
 - Sleep/Wake Button
 - Volume Buttons
 - Motion (to prevent iPhone from switching from portrait to landscape or from responding to other motions)
 - Keyboards
 - Touch
 - Time Limit
 5. Tap Start.
-

End a Guided Access session

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Double-click the side button, then unlock with Face ID (if enabled). Or triple-click the side button, then enter the Guided Access passcode.
 - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Double-click the Home button, then unlock with Touch ID (if enabled). Or triple-click the Home button, then enter the Guided Access passcode.
-


Use accessibility features with Siri on iPhone

Siri is often the easiest way to start using accessibility features with iPhone. With Siri, you can open apps, turn many settings on or off, or use Siri for what it does best—acting as your intelligent personal assistant.


 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Turn on VoiceOver" or "Turn off VoiceOver." [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

Siri knows when VoiceOver is on, so will often read more information back to you than appears on the screen. You can also use VoiceOver to read what Siri shows on the screen.


Type instead of speaking to Siri

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.
 2. To make a request, summon Siri, then interact with Siri by using the keyboard and text field.
-


Control voice feedback for Siri

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri.
 2. Choose Don't Speak in Silent Mode, Only Speak with Hey Siri, or Always Speak Responses.
-

Turn off "Hey Siri" when iPhone is covered or facing down

To prevent iPhone from listening for "Hey Siri" when it's covered or facing down, go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn off Always Listen for "Hey Siri."

Hide apps when Siri is active

To hide the current app when you summon Siri, go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn off Show Apps Behind Siri.

Use accessibility shortcuts on iPhone


After you set up accessibility features, you can quickly turn them on or off with any of the methods below.

Ask Siri to turn on an accessibility feature

Say something like: "Turn on VoiceOver." [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

Triple-click the side button


On an iPhone with Face ID, you can turn accessibility features on or off by triple-clicking the side button.

- *Set up Accessibility Shortcut:* Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then select the features you use the most.
- *Slow down the double-click or triple-click speed for the side button:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Side Button.
- *Use Accessibility Shortcut:* Triple-click the side button.

See [Adjust settings for the side or Home button on iPhone.](#)

Triple-click the Home button



On an iPhone with a Home button, you can turn accessibility features on or off by triple-clicking the Home button.

- *Set up Accessibility Shortcut:* Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then select the features you use the most.
- *Slow down the double-click or triple-click speed for the Home button:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Home Button.
- *Use Accessibility Shortcut:* Triple-click the Home button.

See [Adjust settings for the side or Home button on iPhone](#).

Use Control Center

You can also add accessibility features to Control Center and then activate them from there.

1. Go to Settings  > Control Center, then tap  next to the accessibility features you use the most.
 2. To activate an accessibility feature from Control Center, open Control Center, then tap the accessibility feature.
-

Security and privacy

Use the built-in security and privacy protections of iPhone

iPhone is designed to protect your data and your privacy. Built-in security features help prevent anyone but you from accessing the data on your iPhone and in iCloud. Built-in privacy features minimize how much of your information is available to anyone but you, and you can adjust what information is shared and where you share it.

To take maximum advantage of the security and privacy features built into iPhone, follow these practices:

Set a strong passcode

Setting a passcode to unlock iPhone is the most important thing you can do to safeguard your device. See [Set a passcode on iPhone](#).

Use Face ID or Touch ID

Face ID (supported models) or Touch ID (supported models) provides a secure and convenient way to unlock your iPhone, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps. See [Set up Face ID on iPhone](#) or [Set up Touch ID on iPhone](#).

Turn on Find My iPhone

Find My helps you find your iPhone if it's lost or stolen and prevents anyone else from activating or using your iPhone if it's missing. See [Add a device to Find My on iPhone](#).

Keep your Apple ID secure

Your Apple ID provides access to your data in iCloud and your account information for services like the App Store and Apple Music. To learn how to protect the security of your Apple ID, see [Keep your Apple ID secure on iPhone](#).

Use Sign in with Apple when it's available

To help you set up accounts, many apps and websites offer Sign in with Apple. Sign in with Apple limits the information shared about you, it conveniently uses the Apple ID you already have, and it provides the security of two-factor authentication. See [Sign in with Apple on iPhone](#).

Let iPhone create a strong password if Sign in with Apple isn't available

For a strong password that you don't have to remember, let iPhone create it when you sign up for a service on a website or in an app. See [Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone](#).

Control the app data and location information you share

You can review and adjust [the data you share with apps](#), [the location information you share](#), and [how Apple delivers advertising to you in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks](#).

Note: To get personalized support for these practices, go to the [Apple Support website](#) (not available in all countries or regions).


To learn more about how Apple protects your information, go to the [Privacy website](#).

Protect your iPhone

Set a passcode on iPhone

For better security, set a passcode that needs to be entered to unlock iPhone when you turn it on or wake it. Setting a passcode also turns on data protection, which encrypts your iPhone data with 256-bit AES encryption. (Some apps may opt out of using data protection.)

Set or change the passcode

1. Go to Settings , then do one of the following:
 - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode.
 - *On an iPhone a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Tap Turn Passcode On or Change Passcode.

To view options for creating a password, tap Passcode Options. The most secure options are Custom Alphanumeric Code and Custom Numeric Code.


Setting a passcode turns on data protection, which encrypts your iPhone data with 256-bit AES encryption. (Some apps may opt out of using data protection.)

After you set a passcode, you can [use Face ID](#) or [Touch ID](#) to unlock iPhone (depending on your model). For additional security, however, you must always enter your passcode to unlock your iPhone under the following conditions:

- You turn on or restart your iPhone.
- You haven't unlocked your iPhone for more than 48 hours.
- You haven't unlocked your iPhone with the passcode in the last 6.5 days, and you haven't unlocked it with Face ID or Touch ID in the last 4 hours.
- Your iPhone receives a remote lock command.
- There are five unsuccessful attempts to unlock your iPhone with Face ID or Touch ID.


- An attempt to use Emergency SOS is initiated (see [Make emergency calls on iPhone](#)).
 - An attempt to view your Medical ID is initiated (see [Create and share your Medical ID in Health on iPhone](#)).
-

Change when iPhone automatically locks

Go to Settings  > Display & Brightness > Auto-Lock, then set a length of time.


Erase data after 10 failed passcodes

Set iPhone to erase all information, media, and personal settings after 10 consecutive failed passcode attempts.

1. Go to Settings , then do one of the following:
 - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode.
 - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Turn on Erase Data.

After all data is erased, you must [restore your device from a backup](#) or [set it up again as new](#).

Turn off the passcode

1. Go to Settings , then do one of the following:
 - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Tap Face ID & Passcode.
 - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Tap Touch ID & Passcode.
 2. Tap Turn Passcode Off.
-

Reset the passcode

If you enter the wrong passcode six times in a row, you'll be locked out of your device, and you'll receive a message that says iPhone is disabled. If you can't remember your passcode, you can erase your iPhone with a computer or with recovery mode, then set a new passcode. (If you made an iCloud or computer backup before you forgot your passcode, you can restore your data and settings from the backup.)


See the Apple Support article [If you forgot the passcode on your iPhone, or your iPhone is disabled](#).

Set up Face ID on iPhone

Use Face ID (supported models) to securely and conveniently unlock iPhone, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps by simply glancing at your iPhone.

To use Face ID, you must also [set up a passcode](#) on your iPhone.

Set up Face ID or add an alternate appearance

- If you didn't set up Face ID when you first set up your iPhone, go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode > Set up Face ID, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- To set up an additional appearance for Face ID to recognize, go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode > Set Up an Alternate Appearance, then follow the onscreen instructions.



If you have physical limitations, you can tap Accessibility Options during Face ID set up. When you do this, setting up facial recognition doesn't require the full range of head motion. Using Face ID is still secure, but it requires more consistency in how you look at iPhone.

Face ID also has an accessibility feature you can use if you're blind or have low vision. If you don't want Face ID to require that you look at iPhone with your eyes open, go to Settings > Accessibility, then turn off Require Attention for Face ID. This feature is automatically turned off if you turn on VoiceOver when you first set up iPhone. See [Change Face ID and attention settings on iPhone](#).

Temporarily disable Face ID


You can temporarily prevent Face ID from unlocking your iPhone.

1. Press and hold the side button and either volume button for 2 seconds.
2. After the sliders appear, press the side button to immediately lock iPhone.

iPhone locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so.

The next time you unlock iPhone with your passcode, Face ID is enabled again.

Turn off Face ID

1. Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode.
 2. Do one of the following:
 - *Turn off Face ID for specific items only:* Turn off one or more options: iPhone Unlock, Apple Pay, iTunes & App Store, or Safari AutoFill.
 - *Turn off Face ID:* Tap Reset Face ID.
-

If your device is lost or stolen, you can prevent Face ID from being used to unlock your device with Find My iPhone Lost Mode. (See [Locate a device in Find My on iPhone.](#))


For more information about Face ID, see [About Face ID advanced technology.](#)

Set up Touch ID on iPhone

Use Touch ID (supported models) to securely and conveniently unlock iPhone, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps by pressing the Home button with your finger or thumb.

To use Touch ID, you must also [set up a passcode](#) on your iPhone.

Turn on fingerprint recognition


1. If you didn't turn on fingerprint recognition when you first set up your iPhone, go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Turn on any of the options, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you turn on iTunes & App Store, you're asked for your Apple ID password when you make your first purchase from the App Store, Apple Books, or the iTunes Store. When you make your next purchases, you're asked to use Touch ID.


Note: If you can't add a fingerprint or unlock your iPhone using Touch ID, see the Apple Support article [If Touch ID isn't working](#).

Add a fingerprint

You can add multiple fingerprints (both of your thumbs and forefingers, for example).

1. Go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode.
 2. Tap Add a Fingerprint.
 3. Follow the onscreen instructions.
-


Name or delete a fingerprint

1. Go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode.


If you added more than one fingerprint, place a finger on the Home button to identify its print.

2. Tap the fingerprint, then enter a name (such as "Thumb") or tap Delete Fingerprint.
-

Unlock iPhone by touching instead of pressing the Home button

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Home Button, then turn on Rest Finger to Open.


Turn off Touch ID

Go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode, then turn off one or more of the options.

Control access to information on the iPhone Lock Screen

You can easily access a few commonly used features (such as widgets, media playback controls, and Control Center) from the Lock Screen. (For security, USB connections aren't allowed when iPhone is locked.) You can control access to these items when iPhone is locked.

If you turn off Lock Screen access to a feature, you prevent someone who has your iPhone from viewing any personal information that it might contain (such as an upcoming event in the Calendar widget). However, you also lose quick access to the information yourself.

Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with a Home button), then select your options.

You can turn access on or off to the following features while iPhone is locked:

- Widgets (see [Add widgets to the iPhone Home Screen](#))

- Notification Center (see [View and respond to notifications on iPhone](#))
- Control Center (see [Use and customize Control Center on iPhone](#))
- Siri (see [Ask Siri on iPhone](#))
- Replying to messages (see [Send and receive text messages on iPhone](#))
- Home Control (see [Intro to Home on iPhone](#))
- Wallet (see [Add and manage passes in Wallet on iPhone](#))
- Returning missed calls (see [Answer or decline incoming calls on iPhone](#))
- Connecting to a Mac, a Windows PC, or an accessory with USB (such as when you connect iPhone to your computer using USB)

Important: If you change the default setting and allow USB connections when iPhone is locked, you disable an important security feature of your iPhone.

You can also supply medical information and emergency contacts in a Medical ID that first responders and others can view on your iPhone when it's locked. See [Create and share your Medical ID in Health on iPhone](#).

Protect your accounts


Keep your Apple ID secure on iPhone

Your Apple ID is the account you use to access Apple services like the App Store, Apple Music, iCloud, iMessage, FaceTime, and more. Your account includes the email address and password you use to sign in as well as the contact, payment, and security details you use across Apple services. Apple employs industry-standard practices to safeguard your Apple ID.

Here are some of the best practices you can follow to maximize the security of your account.

- Don't share your Apple ID with other people, even family members.

To share purchases, subscriptions, a family calendar, and more without sharing Apple IDs, [set up Family Sharing](#).

- Never provide your password, security questions, verification codes, recovery key, or any other account security details to anyone else. Apple will never ask you for this information.
- When accessing your Apple ID account page in Safari or another web browser, look for the lock icon  in the address field to verify that your session is encrypted and secure.
- When using a public computer, always sign out when your session is complete to prevent other people from accessing your account.

- Avoid phishing scams. Don't click links in suspicious email or text messages and never provide personal information on any website you aren't certain is legitimate. See the Apple Support article [Recognize and avoid phishing messages, phony support calls, and other scams](#).
- Don't use your password with other online accounts.
- Let two-factor authentication protect your account. If you create a new Apple ID on a device with iOS 13.4, iPadOS 13.4, macOS 10.15.4, or later, your account automatically uses two-factor authentication. If you previously created an Apple ID account without two-factor authentication, turn on two-factor authentication. See [Manage two-factor authentication from iPhone](#).

For more information about best practices, see the Apple Support article [Security and your Apple ID](#).

To set up or manage your Apple ID, go to the [Apple ID website](#).

Sign in with Apple on iPhone

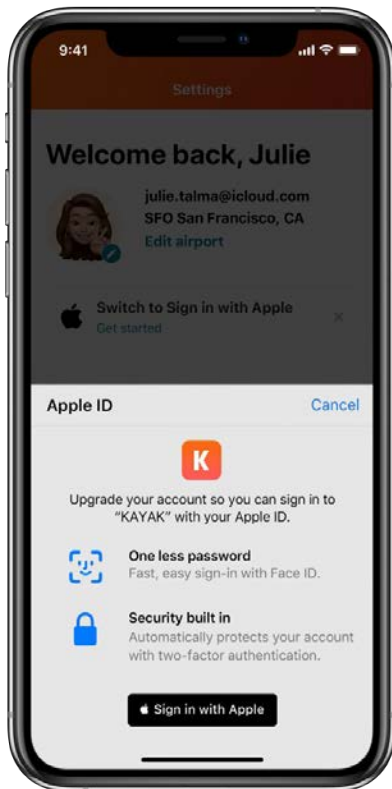
With Sign in with Apple, you can sign in to participating apps and websites with your Apple ID. You don't need to create and remember new passwords, and your account is protected with two-factor authentication.

Sign in with Apple is designed to respect your privacy. Apps and websites can ask only for your name and email address to set up your account, and Apple won't track you as you use them.

Set up or upgrade an account to Sign in with Apple

When a participating app or website asks you to set up or upgrade an account, do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.



Some apps (and websites) don't request your name and email address. In this case, you simply authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

Others may ask for your name and email address to set up a personalized account. When an app asks for this information, Sign in with Apple displays your name and the personal email address from your Apple ID account for you to review.

To edit your name, tap it, then use the keyboard to make changes.

To specify an email address, do one of the following:

- *Use your personal email address:* Tap Share My Email.

If you have multiple email addresses associated with your Apple ID, choose the address you want.

- *Hide your email address:* Tap Hide My Email.

This option allows you to receive email from the app without sharing your personal email address. When you choose this option, Apple creates a unique, random email address for you, and any email sent from the app to this address is forwarded to your personal address.

After you review your information and choose an email option, tap Continue, authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

Sign in to access your account

After you set up an account with an app or website using Sign in with Apple, you typically don't need to sign in to it again on your iPhone. But if you're asked to sign in (for example, after you sign out of an account), do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.
 2. Review the Apple ID that appears, then tap Continue.
 3. Authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model).
-

Change the address used to forward email

If you chose to hide your email address when you created an account and you have more than one address associated with your Apple ID, you can change the address that receives your forwarded email.

1. Go to Settings > [your name] > Name, Phone Numbers, Email > Forward To.
 2. Choose a different email address, then tap Done.
-

Change Sign in with Apple settings for an app or website

1. Go to Settings > [your name] > Password and Security.
 2. Tap Apps Using Your Apple ID.
 3. Choose an app, then do either of the following:
 - *Turn off forwarding email:* Turn off Forward To. You won't receive any further emails from the app.
 - *Stop using Sign in with Apple:* Tap Stop Using Apple ID. You may be asked to create a new account the next time you try to sign in with the app.
-

Sign in with Apple also works on your other devices—iPad, Apple Watch, Mac, Apple TV, and iPod touch—where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

To sign in from an Android app, a Windows app, or any web browser, tap Sign in with Apple, then enter your Apple ID and password.

Sign in with Apple requires two-factor authentication for your Apple ID. This protects your Apple ID, your app accounts, and your app content. For information about how two-factor authentication works, see the Apple Support article [Two-factor authentication for Apple ID](#).

For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to use Sign in with Apple](#).

Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone

When you sign up for services on websites and in apps, you can let iPhone create strong passwords for many of your accounts, or you can create your own passwords.

iPhone stores the passwords in iCloud Keychain and fills them in for you automatically, so you don't have to memorize them.

Note: Instead of creating an account and password, [use Sign in with Apple](#) when a participating app or website invites you to set up an account. Sign in with Apple uses the Apple ID you already have, and it limits the information shared about you.

Create a strong password for a new account


1. On the new account screen for the website or app, enter a new account name.

For supported websites and apps, iPhone suggests a unique, complex password.

2. Do one of the following:

- *Choose the suggested password:* Tap Use Strong Password.
- *Make up your own password:* Tap Choose My Own Password.


3. To later allow iPhone to automatically fill in the password for you, tap Yes when you're asked if you want to save the password.

Note: For iPhone to create and store passwords, iCloud Keychain must be turned on. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Keychain.


Automatically fill in a saved password

1. On the sign-in screen for the website or app, tap the account name field.


2. Do one of the following:

- Tap the account suggested at the bottom of the screen or near the top of the keyboard.
- Tap , tap Other Passwords, then tap an account.

The password is filled in. To see the password, tap .



To enter an account or password that isn't saved, tap  on the sign-in screen.

View your saved passwords


 **Ask Siri.** Say something like: "Show me my passwords." [Learn how to ask Siri.](#)

To view the password for an account, tap it.

You can also view your passwords without asking Siri. Do one of the following, then tap an account to view its password:


- Go to Settings  > Passwords.
 - On a sign-in screen, tap .
-

Prevent iPhone from automatically filling in passwords

Go to Settings  > Passwords > AutoFill Passwords, then turn off AutoFill Passwords.

Change a weak password on iPhone

If you create your own passwords and any are weak (for example, they're easily guessed or used multiple times), iPhone identifies them for you automatically.

1. Go to Settings  > Passwords > Security Recommendations.

If an account has a weak password, a message explains the problem.

2. Tap the account.
 3. Tap Change Password, then change your password on the website or in the app.
-

iPhone also securely monitors your passwords and alerts you if they appear in known data leaks. If you don't want iPhone to perform this monitoring, go to Settings > Passwords > Security Recommendations, then turn off Detect Compromised Passwords.

Automatically fill in SMS passcodes on iPhone

When you sign in to some apps and websites, a one-time SMS passcode is sent to your iPhone. As a security measure, you are required to enter the code into the app or website. iPhone can detect the passcode in Messages and display it above the keyboard.

To use the passcode, tap it.



Note: With Continuity, all the SMS/MMS messages you send and receive on iPhone can also appear on your other iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch devices and your Mac. See the Apple Support article [Use Continuity to connect your Mac, iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, and Apple Watch](#).


Share passwords securely with AirDrop on iPhone

Use AirDrop to securely share passwords with someone using an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Mac.

[iCloud Keychain must be set up](#) on your iPhone.

Send a password

To use AirDrop to share a password, the person you're sharing with must be in your Contacts. To share with someone on iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch, ask them to open Control Center and [allow AirDrop to receive items](#). To share with someone on a Mac, ask them to allow themselves to be discovered in AirDrop in the Finder.

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > Passwords.
2. Tap the account you want to share.

3. Tap Password, then tap AirDrop.



4. Tap the contact you want to send the password to.



Receive a password

To receive a password, you must be in the sender's contacts.

1. If you haven't already done so, [allow AirDrop to receive items](#).
2. When you receive a request to accept a password from someone else, tap Accept.


The password is saved on your iPhone, where you can [view it](#) and let iPhone [automatically fill it in](#) on the sign-in screen for the account.

Make your passwords available on all your devices with iPhone and iCloud Keychain

Use iCloud Keychain to keep your website and app passwords, credit card information, Wi-Fi network information, and other account information up to date across all of your approved devices and Mac computers. (iOS 7, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.9, or later required.) iCloud Keychain is secured with 256-bit AES encryption during storage and transmission, and its data cannot be read by Apple.

iCloud Keychain can also keep the accounts you use in Mail, Contacts, Calendar, and Messages up to date across all of your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch devices and Mac computers.

Set up iCloud Keychain

If you didn't turn on iCloud Keychain when you first set up your iPhone, go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Keychain, turn on iCloud Keychain, then follow the onscreen instructions.

When you set up iCloud Keychain, you create an iCloud Security Code, which you can use to authorize additional devices that use your iCloud Keychain. It's also used for verification so that you can perform other iCloud Keychain actions, such as recovering your iCloud Keychain if you lose all your devices.

Set up iCloud Keychain on an additional device

When you turn on iCloud Keychain on an additional device, your other devices using iCloud Keychain receive a notification requesting your approval of the additional device.

On one of your other devices, approve the additional device. Your iCloud Keychain automatically begins updating on the additional device.

To approve iCloud Keychain when you don't have access to your other devices, follow the onscreen instructions to use your iCloud Security Code.

Reset or create an iCloud Security Code

If you enter the wrong iCloud Security Code too many times when using iCloud Keychain, your iCloud Keychain is disabled on that device, and your keychain in iCloud is deleted.

To reset or create a new iCloud Security Code, see the Apple Support article [If you enter your iCloud Security Code incorrectly too many times](#).

To learn more about iCloud Keychain, see the Apple Support article [Set up iCloud Keychain](#).

Manage two-factor authentication from iPhone


Two-factor authentication helps prevent others from accessing your Apple ID account, even if they know your Apple ID password. Two-factor authentication is built into iOS 9, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.11, or later.

Certain features in iOS, iPadOS, and macOS require the security of two-factor authentication, which is designed to protect your information. If you create a new Apple ID on a device with iOS 13.4, iPadOS 13.4, macOS 10.15.4, or later, your account automatically uses two-factor authentication. If you previously created an Apple ID account without two-factor authentication, you can turn on its extra layer of security at any time.

Note: Certain account types may be ineligible for two-factor authentication at the discretion of Apple. Two-factor authentication isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of two-factor authentication for Apple ID](#).

For information about how two-factor authentication works, see the Apple Support article [Two-factor authentication for Apple ID](#).

Turn on two-factor authentication

1. If your Apple ID account isn't already using two-factor authentication, go to Settings  > [your name] > Password & Security.
2. Tap Turn On Two-Factor Authentication, then tap Continue.
3. Enter a *trusted phone number*, a phone number where you want to receive verification codes for two-factor authentication (it can be the number for your iPhone).

You can choose to receive the codes by text message or automated phone call.

4. Tap Next.
5. Enter the verification code sent to your trusted phone number.

To send or resend a verification code, tap "Didn't get a verification code?"

You won't be asked for a verification code again on your iPhone unless you sign out completely, erase your iPhone, sign in to your [Apple ID account](#) page in a web browser, or need to change your Apple ID password for security reasons.

After you turn on two-factor authentication, you have a two-week period during which you can turn it off. After that period, you can't turn off two-factor authentication. To turn it off, open your confirmation email and click the link to return to your previous security settings. Keep in mind that turning off two-factor authentication makes your account less secure and means you can't use features that require a higher level of security.


Note: If you use two-step verification and upgrade to iOS 13 or later, your account might be migrated to use two-factor authentication. See the Apple Support article [Two-step verification for Apple ID](#).

Add another device as a trusted device

A trusted device is one that can be used to verify your identity by displaying a verification code from Apple when you sign in on a different device or browser. A trusted device must meet these minimum system requirements: iOS 9, iPadOS 13, or OS X 10.11.

1. After you turn on two-factor authentication on one device, sign in with the same Apple ID on another device.

2. When you're asked to enter a six-digit verification code, do one of the following:



- *Obtain the verification code on your iPhone or another trusted device that's connected to the internet:* Look for a notification on that device, then tap or click Allow to make the code appear on that device. (A trusted device is an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Mac on which you've already turned on two-factor authentication and on which you're signed in with your Apple ID.)
- *Obtain the verification at a trusted phone number:* If a trusted device isn't available, tap "Didn't get a verification code?" then choose a phone number.
- *Obtain the verification code on a trusted device that's offline:* On a trusted iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch, go to Settings > [your name] > Password & Security, then tap Get Verification Code. On a trusted Mac with macOS 10.15 or later, choose Apple menu  > System Preferences > Apple ID > Password & Security, then click Get Verification Code. On a trusted Mac with macOS 10.14 and earlier, choose Apple menu > System Preferences > iCloud > Account Details > Security, then click Get Verification Code.

3. Enter the verification code on the new device.

You won't be asked for a verification code again unless you sign out completely, erase your device, sign in to your Apple ID account page in a web browser, or need to change your Apple ID password for security reasons.

Add or remove a trusted phone number

When you enrolled in two-factor authentication, you had to verify one trusted phone number. You should also consider adding other phone numbers you can access, such as a home phone, or a number used by a family member or close friend.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Password & Security.
2. Tap Edit (above the list of trusted phone numbers), then do one of the following:
 - *Add a number:* Tap Add a Trusted Phone Number.
 - *Remove a number:* Tap  next to the phone number.

Trusted phone numbers don't automatically receive verification codes. If you can't access any trusted devices when setting up a new device for two-factor authentication, tap "Didn't get a verification code?" on the new device, then choose one of your trusted phone numbers to receive the verification code.

View or remove trusted devices

1. Go to Settings  > [your name].

A list of the devices associated with your Apple ID appears near the bottom of the screen.

2. To see if a listed device is trusted, tap it, then look for “This device is trusted and can receive Apple ID verification codes.”
3. To remove a device, tap it, then tap Remove from Account.

Removing a trusted device ensures that it can no longer display verification codes and that access to iCloud (and other Apple services on the device) is blocked until you sign in again with two-factor authentication.

Generate a password for an app that signs in to your Apple ID account

With two-factor authentication, you need an app-specific password to sign in to your Apple ID account from a third-party app or service—such as an email, contacts, or calendar app. After you generate the app-specific password, use it to sign in to your Apple ID account from the app and access the information you store in iCloud.

1. Sign in to your [Apple ID account](#).
2. Tap Generate Password (below App-Specific Passwords).
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

After you generate your app-specific password, enter or paste it into the password field of the app as you would normally.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [Using app-specific passwords](#).


Privacy protections on iPhone

Control access to information in apps on iPhone

You control whether third-party apps have access to information in Contacts, Photos, Calendar, and other apps.

Review or change access to information in apps

The first time an app wants to use information from another app, you receive a request with an explanation. For example, a messaging app may request access to your contacts to find friends who are using the same app. After you grant or deny access, you can change access later.

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy.
2. Tap a category of information, such as Calendars, Reminders, or Motion & Fitness.

The list shows the apps that requested access. You can turn access on or off for any app on the list.


Note: To understand how a third-party app uses the data it's requesting, review its terms and privacy policy. See the Apple Support article [About privacy and Location Services](#).

Control access to hardware features on iPhone

Before apps use the camera or microphone on your iPhone, they're required to request your permission and explain why they're asking. For example, a social networking app may ask to use your camera so that you can take and upload pictures to that app. Apps are similarly required to request your permission to use various other hardware features, including Bluetooth connectivity, motion and fitness sensors, and devices on your local network.

You can review which apps have requested access to these hardware features, and you can change their access at your discretion.

Review or change access to the camera, microphone, and other hardware features

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy.
2. Tap a hardware feature, such as Camera, Bluetooth, Local Network, or Microphone.

The list shows the apps that requested access. You can turn access on or off for any app on the list.

Note: An orange indicator appears at the top of the screen whenever an app uses the microphone (without the camera). Whenever an app uses the camera (including when the camera and microphone are used together), a green indicator appears. Also, a message appears at the top of Control Center to inform you when an app has recently used either.



The green indicator shows the camera is in use.

Control app tracking permissions on iPhone

Before apps track you or your iPhone across apps or websites owned by other companies (for example, to target advertising to you or share your information with data brokers), they're required to ask your permission. After you grant or deny permission to an app, you can change permission later. You can also stop all apps from requesting permission.

Review or change an app's permission to track you

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy > Tracking.


The list shows the apps that requested permission to track you. You can turn permission on or off for any app on the list.

2. To stop all apps from asking permission to track you, turn off Allow Apps to Request to Track (at the top of the screen).

For more information about app tracking, tap Learn More near the top of the screen.

Control the location information you share on iPhone


You control whether iPhone and apps have information about your location.

To figure out where you are when getting directions, setting up meetings, and more, Location Services uses information (when available) from GPS networks, your Bluetooth connections, your local Wi-Fi networks, and your cellular network. When an app is using Location Services,  appears in the status bar.

When you set up iPhone, you're asked if you want to turn on Location Services. Afterward, you can turn Location Services on or off at any time.


The first time an app wants location data from your iPhone, you receive a request with an explanation. After you grant or deny access, you can change the app's access later.

Turn on Location Services

If you didn't turn on Location Services when you first set up iPhone, go to Settings  > Privacy > Location Services, then turn on Location Services.

Important: If you turn off Location Services, many important iPhone features stop working.

Review or change an app's access to location information

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy > Location Services.
2. To review or change access settings for an app or to see its explanation for requesting Location Services, tap the app.


To allow an app to use your specific location, leave Precise Location turned on. To share only your approximate location—which may be sufficient for an app that doesn't need your exact location—turn Precise Location off.

Note: If you set the access for an app to Ask Next Time, you're asked to turn on Location Services again the next time an app tries to use it.

To understand how a third-party app uses the information it's requesting, review its terms and privacy policy. See the Apple Support article [About privacy and Location Services](#).

Hide the map in Location Services alerts



When you allow an app to always use your location in the background, you may receive alerts about the app's use of that information. (These alerts let you change your permission, if you want to.) In the alerts, a map shows locations recently accessed by the app.

To hide the map, go to Settings  > Privacy > Location Services > Location Alerts, then turn off Show Map in Location Alerts.

With the setting off, you continue to receive location alerts, but the map isn't shown.

Review or change Location Services settings for system services

Several system services, such as location-based suggestions and location-based ads, use Location Services.



To see the status for each service, to turn Location Services on or off for each service, or to show  in the status bar when enabled system services use your location, go to Settings  > Privacy > Location Services > System Services.

Use a private network address on iPhone

To help protect your privacy, your iPhone uses a unique private network address, called a *media access control (MAC) address*, on each Wi-Fi network it joins.

If a network can't use a private address (for example, to provide parental controls or to identify your iPhone as authorized to join), you can stop using a private address for that network.

Turn a private address off for a network

1. Go to Settings  > Wi-Fi, then tap  for a network.
2. Turn Private Address off.

Important: For better privacy, leave Private Address turned on for all networks that support it. Using a private address helps reduce tracking of your iPhone across different Wi-Fi networks.

Control how Apple delivers advertising to you on iPhone

You control how Apple delivers advertising.


Ads delivered by Apple may appear in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks. These ads don't access data from any other apps. In the App Store and Apple News, your search and download history may be used to serve you relevant search ads. In Apple News and Stocks, ads are served based partly on what you read or follow. This includes publishers you've enabled notifications for and the type of publishing subscription you have. The articles you read are not used to serve targeted ads to you outside these apps, and information collected about what you read is linked to a random identifier rather than your Apple ID.

Review the information Apple uses to deliver ads

Go to Settings  > Privacy > Apple Advertising > View Ad Targeting Information.


The information is used by Apple to deliver more relevant ads in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks. Your personal data isn't provided to other parties.

Turn personalized ads on or off

Go to Settings  > Privacy > Apple Advertising, then turn Personalized Ads on or off.

Note: Turning off personalized ads limits Apple's ability to deliver relevant ads to you. It may not reduce the number of ads you receive.

Learn more about privacy and Apple's advertising platform

Go to Settings  > Privacy > Apple Advertising > About Advertising & Privacy.

Restart, update, reset, and restore

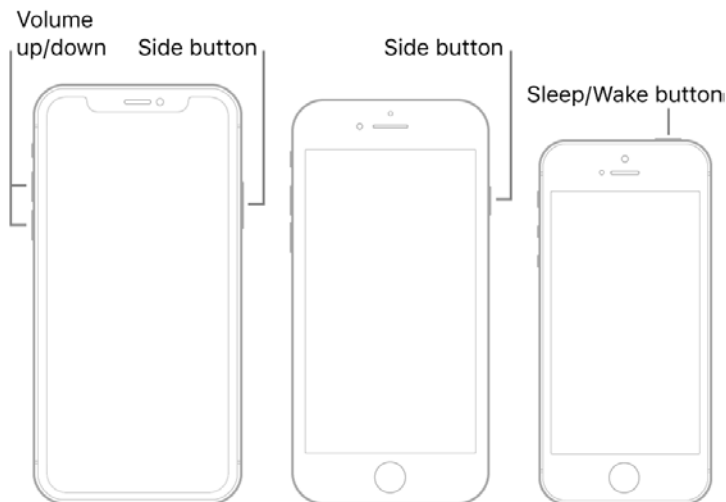
Restart iPhone


If your iPhone isn't working right, try restarting it.

Turn iPhone off then on

1. To turn iPhone off, do one of following:

- *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag the power off slider.
- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press and hold the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model), then drag the slider.



- *All models:* Go to Settings  > General > Shut Down, then drag the slider.
2. To turn iPhone back on, press and hold the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model) until the Apple logo appears.

If you can't turn iPhone off and on, try [forcing it to restart](#).

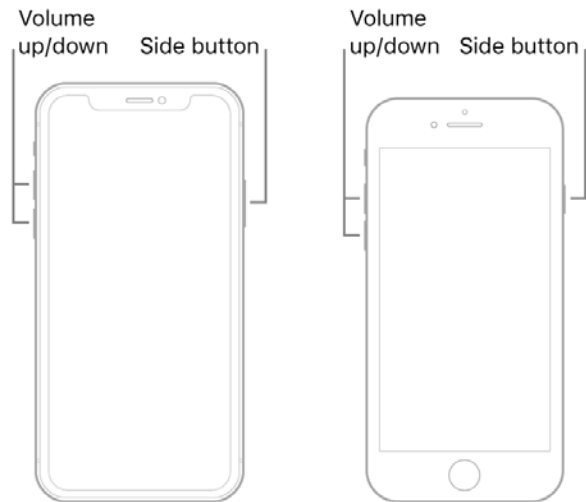
Force restart iPhone

If iPhone isn't responding, and you can't [turn it off and on](#), try forcing it to restart.

Force restart an iPhone with Face ID, iPhone SE (2nd generation), iPhone 8, or iPhone 8

Plus

1. Press and quickly release the volume up button.
2. Press and quickly release the volume down button.
3. Press and hold the side button.
4. When the Apple logo appears, release the button.



Note: If iPhone still doesn't turn on, or if it gets stuck during start up, see the Apple Support article [If your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch won't turn on or is frozen](#).

Force restart iPhone 7 or iPhone 7 Plus

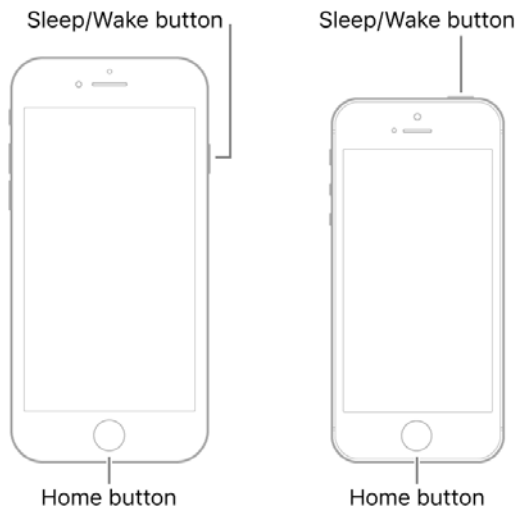
1. Press and hold both the volume down button and the Sleep/Wake button.
2. When the Apple logo appears, release both buttons.



Note: If iPhone still doesn't turn on, or if it gets stuck during start up, see the Apple Support article [If your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch won't turn on or is frozen](#).

Force restart iPhone 6s, iPhone 6s Plus, or iPhone SE (1st generation)

1. Press and hold both the Sleep/Wake button and the Home button.
2. When the Apple logo appears, release both buttons.



Note: If iPhone still doesn't turn on, or if it gets stuck during start up, see the Apple Support article [If your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch won't turn on or is frozen](#).


Update iOS on iPhone

When you update to the latest version of iOS, your data and settings remain unchanged.

Before you update, set up iPhone to [back up](#) automatically, or back up your device manually.

Update iPhone automatically


If you didn't turn on automatic updates when you first set up your iPhone, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > General > Software Update.
2. Tap Customize Automatic Updates (or Automatic Updates). You can choose to automatically download and install updates.

When an update is available, iPhone downloads and installs the update overnight while charging and connected to Wi-Fi. You're notified before an update is installed.

Update iPhone manually

At any time, you can check for and install software updates.

Go to Settings  > General > Software Update.

The screen shows the currently installed version of iOS and whether an update is available.

To turn off automatic updates, go to Settings > General > Software Update > Customize Automatic Updates (or Automatic Updates).

Update using your computer


1. [Connect iPhone and your computer using USB.](#)
 2. Do one of the following:
 - *In the Finder sidebar on your Mac:* Select your iPhone, then click General at the top of the window.

Note: To use the Finder to update your iPhone, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, [use iTunes](#) to update your iPhone.
 - *In the iTunes app on your Windows PC:* Click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window, then click Summary.
 3. Click Check for Update.
 4. To install an available update, click Update.
-


See the Apple Support articles [Update to the latest iOS](#) and [If you can't update or restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).

Back up iPhone

You can back up iPhone using iCloud or your computer. To decide which method is best for you, see [About backups for iOS devices](#).

 **Tip:** If you replace your iPhone, you can use its backup to transfer your information to the new device. See [Restore all content to iPhone from a backup](#).

Back up iPhone using iCloud

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > iCloud Backup.
2. Turn on iCloud Backup. iCloud automatically backs up your iPhone daily when iPhone is connected to power, locked, and on Wi-Fi.

3. To perform a manual backup, tap Back Up Now.

To view your iCloud backups, go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud > Manage Storage > Backups. To delete a backup, choose a backup from the list, then tap Delete Backup.

Back up iPhone using your Mac

1. [Connect iPhone and your computer using USB.](#)
2. In the Finder sidebar on your Mac, select your iPhone.

Note: To use the Finder to back up iPhone, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, [use iTunes](#) to back up iPhone.

3. At the top of the Finder window, click General.
4. Select “Back up all of the data on your iPhone to this Mac.”
5. To encrypt your backup data and protect it with a password, select “Encrypt local backup.”
6. Click Back Up Now.

Note: You can also connect iPhone to your computer wirelessly if you [set up Wi-Fi syncing](#).

Back up iPhone using your Windows PC

1. [Connect iPhone and your computer using USB.](#)
2. In the iTunes app on your PC, click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window.
3. Click Summary.
4. Click Back Up Now (below Backups).
5. To encrypt your backups, select “Encrypt local backup,” type a password, then click Set Password.


To see the backups stored on your computer, choose Edit > Preferences, then click Devices. Encrypted backups have a lock icon in the list of backups.

Note: You can also connect iPhone to your computer wirelessly if you [set up Wi-Fi syncing](#).

Return iPhone settings to their defaults

You can return settings to their defaults without erasing your content.


If you want to save your settings, [back up](#) iPhone before returning them to their defaults. For example, if you're trying to solve a problem but returning settings to their defaults doesn't help, you might want to restore your previous settings from a backup.

1. Go to Settings  > General > Reset.
2. Choose an option:

WARNING: If you choose the Erase All Content and Settings option, all of your content is removed. See [Erase iPhone](#).

- *Reset All Settings:* All settings—including network settings, the keyboard dictionary, the Home Screen layout, location settings, privacy settings, and Apple Pay cards—are removed or reset to their defaults. No data or media are deleted.
- *Reset Network Settings:* All network settings are removed. In addition, the device name assigned in Settings > General > About is reset to “iPhone,” and manually trusted certificates (such as for websites) are changed to untrusted.

Cellular data roaming may also be turned off. (See [View or change cellular settings on iPhone](#).)

Reset Network Settings: All network settings are removed. In addition, the device name assigned in  > General > About is reset to “iPhone,” and manually trusted certificates (such as for websites) are changed to untrusted.

When you reset network settings, previously used networks and VPN settings that weren't installed by a configuration profile or mobile device management (MDM) are removed. Wi-Fi is turned off and then back on, disconnecting you from any network you're on. The Wi-Fi and Ask to Join Networks settings remain turned on.

To remove VPN settings installed by a configuration profile, go to Settings > General > Profiles & Device Management, select the configuration profile, then tap Remove Profile. This also removes other settings and accounts provided by the profile. See [Install or remove configuration profiles on iPhone](#) in this guide.

To remove network settings installed by MDM, go to Settings > General > Profiles & Device Management, select the management, then tap Remove Management. This also removes other settings and certificates provided by MDM. See “Mobile device management (MDM)” in the [iOS Deployment Reference](#).

- *Reset Keyboard Dictionary:* You add words to the keyboard dictionary by rejecting words iPhone suggests as you type. Resetting the keyboard dictionary erases only the words you've added.
 - *Reset Home Screen Layout:* Returns the built-in apps to their original layout on the Home Screen.
 - *Reset Location & Privacy:* Resets the location services and privacy settings to their defaults.
-

If you want to completely erase your iPhone, see [Erase all content and settings from iPhone](#). If you want or need to use a computer to erase your iPhone, see [Use a computer to erase all content and settings from iPhone](#).

Restore all content to iPhone from a backup

You can restore content, settings, and apps from a backup to a new or newly erased iPhone.

Important: You must first create a backup of your iPhone. See [Back up iPhone](#).

Restore iPhone from an iCloud backup

1. Turn on a new or newly erased iPhone.
2. Follow the online instructions to choose a language and region.
3. Tap Set Up Manually.
4. Tap Restore from iCloud Backup, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You're asked for your Apple ID. If you've forgotten your Apple ID, see the [Recover your Apple ID website](#).

Restore iPhone from a computer backup

1. [Using USB](#), connect a new or newly erased iPhone to the computer containing your backup.
2. Do one of the following:

- *In the Finder sidebar on your Mac:* Select your iPhone, then click Trust.

Note: To use the Finder to restore iPhone from a backup, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, [use iTunes](#) to restore from a backup.

- *In the iTunes app on a Windows PC:* If you have multiple devices connected to your PC, click the device icon near the top left of the iTunes window, then select your new or newly erased iPhone from the list.

3. On the welcome screen, click "Restore from this backup," choose your backup from the list, then click Continue.

If your backup is encrypted, you must enter the password before restoring your files and settings.

See the Apple Support articles [Restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch from a backup](#) and [If you can't update or restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).

Restore purchased and deleted items to iPhone

You can redownload items from the App Store, Book Store, and iTunes Store without repurchasing them. If you're part of a [Family Sharing](#) group, you can download items purchased by other family members, too. To restore purchases that aren't on your iPhone, see the Apple Support article [Redownload apps, music, movies, TV shows, and books from the App Store, iTunes Store, and Apple Books](#).

You can also [recover recently deleted email, photos, notes, and voice memos](#).


Sell or give away your iPhone

Before you sell or give away your iPhone, see the Apple Support article [What to do before you sell or give away your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#), and be sure to perform the following tasks:

- If you paired an Apple Watch with your iPhone, unpair your Apple Watch. (See the Apple Support article [Unpair and erase your Apple Watch](#).)
- [Back up iPhone](#). If you replace one iPhone with another, you can [use the setup assistant](#) to restore the backup to your new iPhone.
- [Erase all content and settings](#) that contain personal information. If you previously [turned on Find My](#) for your iPhone, Activation Lock is removed when you erase iPhone, making it ready for a new owner.

Erase iPhone

When you delete data, it's no longer accessible through the iPhone interface, but it isn't erased from iPhone storage. To remove all of your content and settings from storage, erase iPhone. For example, erase iPhone before you [sell it or give it away](#). If you want to save your content and settings, [back up](#) iPhone before erasing it.

You can erase iPhone from Settings . If you're unable to open Settings, you can use a computer to erase iPhone.

Erase all content and settings from iPhone


1. Go to Settings > General > Reset.

If you're asked to enter your passcode and you've forgotten it, see [Reset the passcode](#). If you're asked to enter your Apple ID password and you've forgotten it, see the [Recover your Apple ID website](#).

2. Tap Erase All Content and Settings.

When iPhone restarts with all content and settings erased, you have the option to set up iPhone as new or restore it from a backup. See [Turn on and set up iPhone](#).

Use a computer to erase all content and settings from iPhone

You can use a Mac or Windows PC to erase all data and settings from your iPhone, restore iPhone to factory settings, and install the latest version of iOS. For example, if you can't open Settings  on iPhone, you can use this approach to restore iPhone to factory settings.


Before iPhone is erased, you have the option to back it up. If you make a backup, you can use the backup to restore your data and settings on your iPhone or on a new device. See [Restore iPhone from a computer backup](#).

1. [Connect iPhone and your computer using USB](#).
2. Do one of the following:
 - *In the Finder sidebar on your Mac:* Select your iPhone, click General at the top of the window, then click Restore iPhone.

Note: To use the Finder to restore iPhone to factory settings, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, [use iTunes](#) to restore iPhone.
 - *In the iTunes app on a Windows PC:* Click the iPhone button near the top left of the iTunes window, click Summary, then click Restore iPhone.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

See the Apple Support article [If you can't update or restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).

Install or remove configuration profiles on iPhone

Configuration profiles define settings for using iPhone with corporate or school networks or accounts. You might be asked to install a configuration profile that was sent to you in an email, or one that is downloaded from a webpage. You're asked for permission to install the profile and, when you open the file, information about what it contains is displayed. You can see the profiles you have installed in Settings  > General > Profiles & Device Management. If you delete a profile, all of the settings, apps, and data associated with the profile are also deleted.

Safety, handling, and support

Important safety information for iPhone

⚠ WARNING: Failure to follow these safety instructions could result in fire, electric shock, injury, or damage to iPhone or other property. Read all the safety information below before using iPhone.

Handling Handle iPhone with care. It is made of metal, glass, and plastic and has sensitive electronic components inside. iPhone or its battery can be damaged if dropped, burned, punctured, or crushed, or if it comes in contact with liquid. If you suspect damage to iPhone or the battery, discontinue use of iPhone, as it may cause overheating or injury. Don't use iPhone with cracked glass, as it may cause injury. If you're concerned about scratching the surface of iPhone, consider using a case or cover.

Repairing Don't open iPhone and don't attempt to repair iPhone yourself. Disassembling iPhone may damage it, result in loss of splash and water resistance (supported models), or cause injury to you. iPhone 7 and later contain one or more lasers that could be damaged during repair or disassembly, which could result in hazardous exposure to infrared laser emissions that are not visible. If iPhone is damaged or malfunctions, contact Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider. Repairs by service providers other than Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider may not involve the use of Apple genuine parts and may affect the safety and functionality of the device. You can find more information about repairs and service at the [iPhone Repair website](#).

Battery Don't attempt to replace the iPhone battery yourself. The lithium-ion battery in iPhone should be replaced by Apple or an authorized service provider. Improper replacement or repair could damage the battery, cause overheating, or result in injury. The battery must be recycled or disposed of separately from household waste. Don't incinerate the battery. For information about battery service and recycling, see the [Battery Service and Recycling website](#).

Distraction Using iPhone in some circumstances may distract you and might cause a dangerous situation (for example, avoid using headphones while riding a bicycle and avoid typing a text message while driving a car). Observe rules that prohibit or restrict the use of mobile devices or headphones. For more about safety while driving, see [Turn on Do Not Disturb While Driving on iPhone](#).

Navigation Maps depends on data services. These data services are subject to change and may not be available in all countries or regions, resulting in maps and location-based information that may be unavailable, inaccurate, or incomplete. Compare the information provided in Maps to your surroundings. Use common sense when navigating. Always observe current road conditions and posted signs to resolve any discrepancies. Some Maps features require Location Services.

Charging (new) Do any of the following to charge iPhone:

- Connect iPhone to a power outlet using the included charging cable and an Apple-branded compatible power adapter.
- Place iPhone face up on a Qi-certified charger (supported models).
- [Connect iPhone and your computer using USB](#).

You may also charge iPhone with power adapters featuring an MFi logo or other third-party power adapters that are compliant with USB 2.0 or later and with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards, including the International Standard for Safety Information Technology Equipment (IEC 60950-1) and the Standard for Safety of Audio/Video, Information and Communication Technology Equipment (IEC 62368-1). Other adapters may not meet applicable safety standards, and charging with such adapters could pose a risk of death or injury.

Using damaged cables or chargers, or charging when moisture is present, can cause fire, electric shock, injury, or damage to iPhone or other property. When you use the charging cable (included) to charge iPhone, make sure its USB or USB-C connector is fully inserted into a compatible power adapter before you plug the adapter into a power outlet. It's important to keep iPhone, the charging cable, the power adapter, and wireless chargers in a well-ventilated area when in use or charging. When using a wireless charger, remove metallic cases and avoid placing metallic foreign objects on the charger (for example, keys, coins, batteries, or jewelry), as they may become warm or interfere with charging.

Charging cable and connector Avoid prolonged skin contact with the charging cable and connector when the charging cable is connected to a power source because it may cause discomfort or injury. Sleeping or sitting on the charging cable or connector should be avoided.

Prolonged heat exposure iPhone and its USB power adapter comply with applicable surface temperature standards and limits defined by the International Standard for Safety of Information Technology Equipment (IEC 60950-1). However, even within these limits, sustained contact with warm surfaces for long periods of time may cause discomfort or injury. Use common sense to avoid situations where your skin is in contact with a device, its power adapter, or a wireless charger when it's operating or connected to a power source for long periods of time. For example, don't sleep on a device, power adapter, or wireless charger, or place them under a blanket, pillow, or your body, when it's connected to a power source. Keep your iPhone and its power adapter in a well-ventilated area when in use or charging. Take special care if you have a physical condition that affects your ability to detect heat against the body.

USB power adapter To operate the Apple USB power adapter safely and reduce the possibility of heat-related injury or damage, plug the power adapter directly into a power outlet. Don't use the power adapter in wet locations, such as near a sink, bathtub, or shower stall, and don't connect or disconnect the power adapter with wet hands. Stop using the power adapter and any cables if any of the following conditions exist:

- The power adapter plug or prongs are damaged.
- The charge cable becomes frayed or otherwise damaged.
- The power adapter is exposed to excessive moisture, or liquid is spilled into the power adapter.
- The power adapter has been dropped, and its enclosure is damaged.

18W USB power adapter specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase
- *Line voltage:* 100 to 240 V


- *Output voltage:* 5V/3A or 9V/2A


5W USB power adapter specifications:

- *Frequency:* 50 to 60 Hz, single phase
- *Line voltage:* 100 to 240 V
- *Output voltage:* 5V/1A

Hearing loss Listening to sound at high volumes may damage your hearing. Background noise, as well as continued exposure to high volume levels, can make sounds seem quieter than they actually are. Turn on audio playback and check the volume before inserting anything in your ear. For information about how to set a maximum volume limit, see [Limit the headphone volume](#). For more information about hearing loss, see the [Sound and Hearing website](#).

⚠ WARNING: To prevent possible hearing damage, do not listen at high volume levels for long periods.

Radio frequency exposure iPhone uses radio signals to connect to wireless networks. For information about radio frequency (RF) energy resulting from radio signals, and steps you can take to minimize exposure, go to Settings  > General > About > Legal > RF Exposure, or see the [RF Exposure website](#).

Radio frequency interference Observe signs and notices that prohibit or restrict the use of electronic devices. Although iPhone is designed, tested, and manufactured to comply with regulations governing radio frequency emissions, such emissions from iPhone can negatively affect the operation of other electronic equipment, causing them to malfunction. When use is prohibited, such as while traveling in aircraft, or when asked to do so by authorities, turn off iPhone, or [use airplane mode](#) or Settings  > Wi-Fi and Settings > Bluetooth to turn off the iPhone wireless transmitters.

Medical device interference iPhone contains components and radios that emit electromagnetic fields. iPhone contains magnets, and the included EarPods also have magnets. These electromagnetic fields and magnets may interfere with medical devices, such as pacemakers and defibrillators. Consult your physician and medical device manufacturer for information specific to your medical device and whether you need to maintain a safe distance of separation between your medical device and iPhone and the EarPods. If you suspect iPhone or the EarPods are interfering with your medical device, stop using iPhone or EarPods.

Not a medical device iPhone is not a medical device and should not be used as a substitute for professional medical judgment. It is not designed or intended for use in the diagnosis of disease or other conditions, or in the cure, mitigation, treatment, or prevention of any condition or disease. Please consult your healthcare provider prior to making any decisions related to your health.

Medical conditions If you have any medical condition or experience symptoms that you believe could be affected by iPhone or flashing lights (for example, seizures, blackouts, eyestrain, or headaches), consult with your physician prior to using iPhone.

Explosive and other atmospheric conditions Charging or using iPhone in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere, such as areas where the air contains high levels of flammable chemicals, vapors, or particles (such as grain, dust, or metal powders), may be hazardous. Exposing iPhone to environments having high concentrations of industrial chemicals, including near evaporating liquified gasses such as helium, may damage or impair iPhone functionality. Obey all signs and instructions.


Repetitive motion When you perform repetitive activities such as typing, swiping, or playing games on iPhone, you may experience discomfort in your hands, arms, wrists, shoulders, neck, or other parts of your body. If you experience discomfort, stop using iPhone and consult a physician.

High-consequence activities This device is not intended for use where the failure of the device could lead to death, personal injury, or severe environmental damage.

Choking hazard Some iPhone accessories may present a choking hazard to small children. Keep these accessories away from small children.

Important handling information for iPhone

Cleaning Clean iPhone immediately if it comes in contact with anything that may cause stains, or other damage—for example, dirt or sand, ink, makeup, soap, detergent, acids or acidic foods, or lotions. To clean:

- Disconnect all cables, then do one of the following to turn off iPhone:
 - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Simultaneously press and hold the side button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag the top slider.
 - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Press and hold the side button or Sleep/Wake button (depending on your model), then drag the slider.
 - *All models:* Go to Settings  > General > Shut Down, then drag the slider.
- Use a soft, slightly damp, lint-free cloth—for example, a lens cloth.
- Avoid getting moisture in openings.
- Don't use cleaning products or compressed air.

iPhone has a fingerprint-resistant oleophobic (oil-repellant) coating. This coating wears over time with normal usage. Cleaning products and abrasive materials will further diminish the coating and may scratch iPhone.

Exposure to liquid and dust If liquid splashes on iPhone or dust gets on it, wipe it off with a soft, lint-free cloth (for example, a lens cloth) and ensure that your iPhone is dry and free of dust before opening the SIM tray. Minimize exposing iPhone to soap, detergent, acids or acidic foods, and any liquids—for example, salt water, soapy water, pool water, perfume, insect repellent, lotion, sunscreen, oil, adhesive remover, hair dye, and solvents. If iPhone comes into contact with any of these substances, follow the instructions above in the Cleaning section.

Supported models are splash, water, and dust resistant and were tested under controlled laboratory conditions with a rating of either IP68 or IP67 under IEC standard 60529. Splash, water, and dust resistance are not permanent conditions and resistance might decrease as a result of normal wear. Liquid damage not covered under warranty. See the Apple Support article [About splash, water, and dust resistance of iPhone 7 and later](#). To prevent liquid damage on iPhone, avoid the following:

- Swimming or bathing with iPhone
- Exposing iPhone to pressurized water or high velocity water, such as when showering, water skiing, wake boarding, surfing, jet skiing, and so on
- Using iPhone in a sauna or steam room
- Intentionally submerging iPhone in water
- Operating iPhone outside the suggested temperature ranges or in extremely humid conditions
- Dropping iPhone or subjecting it to other impacts
- Disassembling iPhone, including removing screws

If your iPhone has been exposed to liquid, unplug all cables and do not charge your device until it's completely dry. Using accessories or charging when wet may damage your iPhone. Allow at least 5 hours before charging or connecting a Lightning accessory.

To dry iPhone, tap it gently against your hand with the Lightning connector facing down to remove excess liquid. Leave the device in a dry area with sufficient airflow. Placing the device in front of a fan blowing cool air directly into the Lightning connector may help the drying process.

Do not dry your iPhone using an external heat source or insert a foreign object into the Lightning connector such as a cotton swab or a paper towel.

Using connectors, ports, and buttons Never force a connector into a port or apply excessive pressure to a button, because this may cause damage that is not covered under the warranty. If the connector and port don't join with reasonable ease, they probably don't match. Check for obstructions and make sure that the connector matches the port and that you have positioned the connector correctly in relation to the port.

Lightning to USB Cable or USB-C to Lightning Cable Discoloration of the Lightning connector after regular use is normal. Dirt, debris, and exposure to moisture may cause discoloration. If your Lightning cable or connector becomes warm during use or iPhone won't charge or sync, disconnect it from your computer or power adapter and clean the Lightning connector with a soft, dry, lint-free cloth. Do not use liquids or cleaning products when cleaning the Lightning connector.

Certain usage patterns can contribute to the fraying or breaking of cables. The included cable, like any other metal wire or cable, is subject to becoming weak or brittle if repeatedly bent in the same spot. Aim for gentle curves instead of angles in the cable. Regularly inspect the cable and connector for any kinks, breaks, bends, or other damage. Should you find any such damage, discontinue use of the cable.

Operating temperature iPhone is designed to work in ambient temperatures between 32° and 95° F (0° and 35° C) and stored in temperatures between -4° and 113° F (-20° and 45° C). iPhone can be damaged and battery life shortened if stored or operated outside of these temperature ranges. Avoid exposing iPhone to dramatic changes in temperature or humidity. When you're using iPhone or charging the battery, it is normal for iPhone to get warm.

If the interior temperature of iPhone exceeds normal operating temperatures (for example, in a hot car or in direct sunlight for extended periods of time), you may experience the following as it attempts to regulate its temperature:


- iPhone stops charging.
- The screen dims.
- A temperature warning screen appears.
- Some apps may close.

Important: You may not be able to use iPhone while the temperature warning screen is displayed. If iPhone can't regulate its internal temperature, it goes into deep sleep mode until it cools. Move iPhone to a cooler location out of direct sunlight and wait a few minutes before trying to use iPhone again.

See the Apple Support article [Keeping iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch within acceptable operating temperatures](#).


Get information about your iPhone

View overall storage availability and storage used per app

Go to Settings  > General > iPhone Storage.


See the Apple Support articles [How to check the storage on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#) and [Manage your iCloud storage](#).

See battery usage


Go to Settings  > Battery to see the elapsed time since iPhone has been charged and usage by app. See [Charge and monitor the iPhone battery](#).

You can also display battery level as a percentage, turn Low Power Mode on or off, and check your battery's health. See [Charge and monitor the iPhone battery](#).

View call time and cellular usage

Go to Settings  > Cellular. See [View or change cellular settings on iPhone](#).

See more information about iPhone

Go to Settings  > General > About. The items you can view include:


- Name
- iOS software version
- Model name
- Part and model numbers. To the right of Model, the part number appears. To see the model number, tap the part number.
- Serial number
- Cellular network
- Number of songs, videos, photos, and apps
- Capacity and available storage space
- Carrier settings. To the right of Carrier, the carrier settings version number appears. To see additional carrier-specific information, tap the version number. Contact your carrier for more details.
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth addresses
- IMEI (International Mobile Equipment Identity)
- ICCID (Integrated Circuit Card Identifier, or Smart Card) for GSM networks
- MEID (Mobile Equipment Identifier) for CDMA networks
- Modem firmware
- Legal (including legal notices and license, warranty, and RF exposure information)

To copy the serial number and other identifiers, touch and hold the identifier until Copy appears.

To see regulatory marks, go to Settings > General > Legal & Regulatory.

On supported models, you can also find the IMEI on the SIM card tray and the model number in the SIM tray opening.

View or turn off diagnostic information

Go to Settings  > Privacy > Analytics & Improvements.

To help Apple improve products and services, iPhone sends diagnostic and usage data. This data doesn't personally identify you, but may include location information.

View or change cellular settings on iPhone

Turn cellular data and roaming on or off, set which apps and services use cellular data, see call time and cellular data usage, and set other cellular options.

Note: For help with cellular network services, voicemail, and billing, contact your wireless service provider.

If iPhone is connected to the internet via the cellular data network, an icon identifying the cellular network appears in the [status bar](#).

LTE, 5G E, 4G, and 3G service on GSM cellular networks support simultaneous voice and data communications. For all other cellular connections, you can't use internet services while you're talking on the phone unless iPhone also has a Wi-Fi connection to the internet. Depending on your network connection, you may not be able to receive calls while iPhone transfers data over the cellular network—when downloading a webpage, for example.

- *GSM networks:* On an EDGE or GPRS connection, incoming calls may go directly to voicemail during data transfers. For incoming calls that you answer, data transfers are paused.
- *CDMA networks:* On EV-DO connections, data transfers are paused when you answer incoming calls. On 1xRTT connections, incoming calls may go directly to voicemail during data transfers. For incoming calls that you answer, data transfers are paused.

Data transfer resumes when you end the call.

If Cellular Data is off, all data services use only Wi-Fi—including email, web browsing, push notifications, and other services. If Cellular Data is on, carrier charges may apply. For example, using certain features and services that transfer data, such as Siri and Messages, could result in charges to your data plan.

Turn Cellular Data on or off

Go to Settings  > Cellular. The following options may also be available:

- *Turn Voice Roaming on or off:* (CDMA) Turn Voice Roaming off to avoid charges from using other carrier's networks. When your carrier's network isn't available, iPhone won't have cellular (data or voice) service.
- *Turn Data Roaming on or off:* Data Roaming permits internet access over a cellular data network when you're in a region not covered by your carrier's network. When you're traveling, you can turn off Data Roaming to avoid roaming charges.

- *Enable or disable 4G/LTE:* (availability varies by carrier and region) Using 4G or LTE loads internet data faster in some cases but may decrease battery performance. There may be options for turning off 4G/LTE or for selecting Voice & Data (VoLTE) or Data Only.
- *Voice & Data:* (some carriers) Choose LTE to load data faster. (This also turns on VoLTE.) Choose slower speeds to increase battery life.
- *Set up Personal Hotspot:* Personal Hotspot shares the internet connection on iPhone with your computer and other iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch devices. See [Share your internet connection from iPhone](#) in this guide.
- *Turn Wi-Fi Assist on or off:* Wi-Fi Assist is on by default. If Wi-Fi connectivity is poor, Wi-Fi Assist automatically switches to cellular data to boost the signal. Because you stay connected to the internet over cellular when you have a poor Wi-Fi connection, you might use more cellular data, which may incur additional charges depending on your data plan. For more information, see the Apple Support article [About Wi-Fi Assist](#).

Set whether cellular data is used for apps and services

Go to Settings  > Cellular, then turn Cellular Data on or off for any app that can use cellular data.

If a setting is off, iPhone uses only Wi-Fi for that service.



Lock your SIM card

If your device uses a SIM card for phone calls or cellular data, you can lock the card with a personal identification number (PIN) to prevent others from using the card. Then, every time you restart your device or remove the SIM card, your card locks automatically, and you're required to enter your PIN. See [Use a SIM PIN for your iPhone or iPad](#).

Find more resources for iPhone software and service

Refer to the following resources to get more iPhone-related safety, software, and service information.

To learn about	Do this
Using iPhone safely	See Important safety information for iPhone .
iPhone service and support, tips, forums, and Apple software downloads	See the iPhone Support website .
Service and support from your carrier	Contact your carrier or go to your carrier's website.
The latest information about iPhone	See the iPhone website .

To learn about	Do this
Getting personalized support (not available in all countries or regions)	See the Apple Support website .
Managing your Apple ID account	Sign in to your Apple ID account page .
Using iCloud	See iCloud Help .
Using iTunes for Windows	See the iTunes User Guide for Windows .
Using other Apple iPhone apps	See the App Store Support website .
Finding your iPhone serial number, IMEI, ICCID, or MEID	You can find your iPhone serial number, International Mobile Equipment Identity (IMEI), Integrated Circuit Card Identifier (ICCID), or Mobile Equipment Identifier (MEID) on the iPhone packaging. Or, on iPhone, go to Settings  > General > About. See the Apple Support article Find the serial number or IMEI on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch .
Obtaining warranty service	First follow the advice in this guide, then see the iPhone Support website .
Viewing iPhone regulatory information	On iPhone, go to Settings  > General > Legal & Regulatory.
Battery service	See the Battery Service and Recycling website .
Battery performance and health	See the iPhone Battery and Performance website .
Using iPhone in an enterprise environment	See the Apple at Work website .

FCC compliance statement

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment to an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes or modifications to this product not authorized by Apple could void the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) and wireless compliance and negate your authority to operate the product.

This product has demonstrated EMC compliance under conditions that included the use of compliant peripheral devices and shielded cables between system components. It is important that you use compliant peripheral devices and shielded cables between system components to reduce the possibility of causing interference to radios, televisions, and other electronic devices.

Responsible party (contact for FCC matters only):

Apple Inc.
One Apple Park Way, MS 911-AHW
Cupertino, CA 95014
USA

apple.com/contact

ISED Canada compliance statement

This device complies with ISED Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.




Operation in the band 5150–5250 MHz is only for indoor use to reduce the potential for harmful interference to co-channel mobile satellite systems.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'ISDE Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

La bande 5150–5250 MHz est réservée uniquement pour une utilisation à l'intérieur afin de réduire les risques de brouillage préjudiciable aux systèmes de satellites mobiles utilisant les mêmes canaux.

Ultra Wideband information

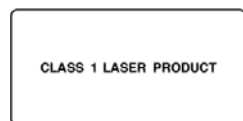
Ultra Wideband is available on iPhone 11, iPhone 11 Pro, and iPhone 11 Pro Max, and availability varies by region.

When use of Ultra Wideband is prohibited in your region, such as while traveling in aircraft, Ultra Wideband can be turned off by turning on airplane mode. To turn on airplane mode, open Control Center, then tap . You can also turn airplane mode on or off in Settings . When airplane mode is on,  appears in the status bar.

Australia: Ultra Wideband transmitters must not be operated within a nominated distance from specified Australian radio-astronomy sites. For further information about nominated distance, please refer to the Radiocommunications (Low Interference Potential Devices) Class Licence 2015 published by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.

Class 1 Laser information for iPhone

iPhone 7 and later are classified as Class 1 Laser products per IEC60825-1 Ed. 3. These devices comply with 21 CFR 1040.10 and 1040.11, except for conformance with IEC 60825-1 Ed. 3., as described in Laser Notice No. 56, dated May 8, 2019. Caution: These devices contain one or more lasers. Use other than as described in the user guide, repair, or disassembly may cause damage, which could result in hazardous exposure to infrared laser emissions that are not visible. This equipment should be serviced by Apple or an authorized service provider.



Apple and the environment

At Apple, we recognize our responsibility to minimize the environmental impacts of our operations and products. See our [Environment website](#).

Disposal and recycling information for iPhone

Apple Recycling Program (available in some countries or regions)

For free recycling of your old device, a prepaid shipping label, and instructions, see the [Apple Trade In website](#).



This symbol indicates that this product and/or battery should not be disposed of with household waste. You must dispose of iPhone properly according to local laws and regulations. When iPhone reaches its end of life, contact local authorities to learn about disposal and recycling options, or simply drop it off at your local Apple Retail Store or return it to Apple. The battery will be removed and recycled in an environmentally friendly manner. See the [Apple Trade In website](#).

European Union—Disposal Information

The symbol above means that according to local laws and regulations your product and/or its battery shall be disposed of separately from household waste. When this product reaches its end of life, take it to a collection point designated by local authorities. The separate collection and recycling of your product and/or its battery at the time of disposal will help conserve natural resources and ensure that it is recycled in a manner that protects human health and the environment.

Brasil – Informações sobre descarte e reciclagem

O símbolo acima indica que este produto e/ou sua bateria não devem ser descartados no lixo doméstico. Quando decidir descartar este produto e/ou sua bateria, faça-o de acordo com as leis e diretrizes ambientais locais. Para informações sobre substâncias de uso restrito, o programa de reciclagem da Apple, pontos de coleta e telefone de informações, visite apple.com/br/environment.

Información sobre eliminación de residuos y reciclaje

El símbolo de arriba indica que este producto y/o su batería no debe desecharse con los residuos domésticos. Cuando decidas desechar este producto y/o su batería, hazlo de conformidad con las leyes y directrices ambientales locales. Para obtener información sobre el programa de reciclaje de Apple, puntos de recolección para reciclaje, sustancias restringidas y otras iniciativas ambientales, visita apple.com/mx/environment o apple.com/la/environment.

Turkey environmental information

Türkiye Cumhuriyeti: AEEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur.

Battery service

The lithium-ion battery in iPhone should be serviced by Apple or an authorized service provider, and must be recycled or disposed of separately from household waste. See the [Battery Service and Recycling website](#).

Dispose of batteries according to your local environmental laws and guidelines.

China mainland battery statement

警告：不要刺破或焚烧。该电池不含水银。

Taiwan battery statement



廢電池請回收

警告：請勿戳刺或焚燒。此電池不含汞。

Apple Inc.

© 2020 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Apple, the Apple logo, 3D Touch, AirDrop, AirPlay, AirPods, AirPods Pro, AirPrint, Apple Music, Apple News, Apple Pay, Apple TV, Apple Wallet, Apple Watch, CarPlay, EarPods, Face ID, FaceTime, Finder, Flyover, Guided Access, Handoff, HomeKit, HomePod, iMessage, iPad, iPad mini, iPadOS, iPad Pro, iPhone, iPod, iPod touch, iTunes, Keychain, Keynote, Lightning, Mac, macOS, Numbers, Pages, Safari, Siri, Spotlight, Touch ID, TrueDepth, True Tone, and watchOS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Apple Books, Live Photos, Magic Keyboard, Memoji, Multi-Touch, and tvOS are trademarks of Apple Inc.

App Store, Genius, iCloud, iCloud Drive, iCloud Keychain, and iTunes Store are service marks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Apple

One Apple Park Way

Cupertino, CA 95014

apple.com

Adobe and Adobe Photoshop Elements are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the U.S. and/or other countries.

Beats, Beats Studio, Beats^X, Powerbeats, and Solo are trademarks of Beats Electronics, LLC., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Powerbeats Pro is a trademark of Beats Electronics, LLC.

IOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and is used under license.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Apple Inc. is under license.

Other company and product names mentioned herein may be trademarks of their respective companies.

Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate. Apple is not responsible for printing or clerical errors.

Some apps are not available in all countries or regions. App availability is subject to change.